

OCR

Oxford Cambridge and RSA

An OCR endorsed textbook

John Taylor

Revised edition
for OCR GCSE
Classical Greek (9–1)

GREEK TO GCSE 1

BLOOMSBURY

ALSO AVAILABLE FROM BLOOMSBURY

Essential GCSE Latin, John Taylor

Latin to GCSE: Part 1, Henry Cullen and John Taylor

Latin to GCSE: Part 2, Henry Cullen and John Taylor

Latin Beyond GCSE, John Taylor

Greek Beyond GCSE, John Taylor

Greek Stories: A GCSE Reader, John Taylor and Kristian Waite

Supplementary resources for *Greek to GCSE: Parts 1 and 2* can be found at
www.bloomsbury.com/Taylor-Greek-to-GCSE

Please type the URL into your web browser and follow the instructions to access
the Companion Website. If you experience any problems, please contact
Bloomsbury at contact@bloomsbury.com

This resource is endorsed by OCR for use with specification OCR GCSE (9-1) Classical Greek (J292). In order to gain OCR endorsement, this resource has undergone an independent quality check. Any references to assessment and/or assessment preparation are the publisher's interpretation of the specification requirements and are not endorsed by OCR. OCR recommends that a range of teaching and learning resources are used in preparing learners for assessment. OCR has not paid for the production of this resource, nor does OCR receive any royalties from its sale. For more information about the endorsement process, please visit the OCR website, www.ocr.org.uk.

Noting Also
Temmuz '2019

Greek to GCSE

Part 1

Revised edition for OCR GCSE
Classical Greek (9–1)

John Taylor

Bloomsbury Academic
An imprint of Bloomsbury Publishing Plc

B L O O M S B U R Y
LONDON • OXFORD • NEW YORK • NEW DELHI • SYDNEY

Bloomsbury Academic

An imprint of Bloomsbury Publishing Plc

50 Bedford Square
London
WC1B 3DP
UK

1385 Broadway
New York
NY 10018
USA

www.bloomsbury.com

BLOOMSBURY and the Diana logo are trademarks of Bloomsbury Publishing Plc

First edition published in 2003

This revised edition published in 2016

Reprinted 2016, 2017

© John Taylor, 2003, 2008, 2016

John Taylor has asserted his right under the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act, 1988, to be identified as Author of this work.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or any information storage or retrieval system, without prior permission in writing from the publishers.

No responsibility for loss caused to any individual or organization acting on or refraining from action as a result of the material in this publication can be accepted by Bloomsbury or the author.

British Library Cataloguing-in-Publication Data

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library.

ISBN: PB: 978-1-47425-516-5
ePDF: 978-1-47425-518-9
ePub: 978-1-47425-517-2

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Names: Taylor, John, 1955 April 11- author.

Title: Greek to GCSE / John Taylor.

Description: Revised edition for OCR GCSE classical Greek. | London : Bloomsbury Academic, 2016. | Includes index.

Identifiers: LCCN 2016019100 (print) | LCCN 2016019692 (ebook) | ISBN 9781474255165 (v.1 : pbk.) | ISBN 9781474255202 (v.2 : pbk.) | ISBN 9781474255189 (epdf) | ISBN 9781474255172 (epub)

Subjects: LCSH: Greek language—Grammar. | Greek language—Study and teaching.

Classification: LCC PA260 .T39 2016 (print) | LCC PA260 (ebook) | DDC 488.2/421—dc23

LC record available at <https://lccn.loc.gov/2016019100>

Cover design: Terry Woodley

Cover image © Thumbelina/Shutterstock

Typeset by RefineCatch Limited, Bungay, Suffolk
Printed and bound in Great Britain

CONTENTS

<i>Preface</i>	ix
<i>List of Illustrations</i>	xii
<i>List of Abbreviations</i>	xiii
<i>Vocabulary and Glossing</i>	xiv
<i>Maps</i>	xv

Chapter One 1

The Greek Alphabet	1
Writing the Letters	2
Vowels	2
Breathings	2
Diphthongs	2
Iota Subscript	3
<i>Background: History of the Greek Alphabet</i>	3
Transliteration	4
Capital letters	6
The verb: present tense	8
Nouns (first and second declension): nominative and accusative	11
The definite article	13
Word order	13
Negative	13
Prepositions	14
Summary of Chapter One grammar	16
Chapter One vocabulary	17

Chapter Two 18

Nouns (first and second declension): nominative and accusative plural	18
The verb <i>to be</i> (present tense)	22
Connecting words	23
First declension feminine nouns: variant pattern	24
Translation of the definite article	26
Expressing time (1)	27

Second declension neuter nouns	27
Summary of Chapter Two grammar	30
Chapter Two vocabulary	31

Chapter Three 33

Nouns (first and second declension): all cases	33
Prepositions	34
Sandwich construction	36
Imperative	38
Adverbs (1)	39
Cases taken by verbs	40
Infinitive	40
Adjectives	41
Adverbs (2)	44
Particles	44
<i>How the Locrians make laws (1)</i>	45
<i>Background: The Rule of Law</i>	47
<i>How the Locrians make laws (2)</i>	47
Future tense	48
Imperfect tense	51
Imperfect of the verb <i>to be</i>	52
Punctuation	55
Questions	55
<i>Athenian Wit</i>	56
Summary of Chapter Three grammar	57
Chapter Three vocabulary	59

Chapter Four 60

Aorist tense (1)	60
<i>Background: Aesop's Fables</i>	64
<i>The Sun and the Frogs</i>	65
<i>The Frogs and their Ruler (1)</i>	66
<i>The Frogs and their Ruler (2)</i>	68
Aorist tense (2)	69
<i>Zeus and the Tortoise</i>	75
Gender and declension (1)	75
Gender and declension (2)	76
Gender and declension (3)	79
Revision overview of first and second declension nouns	80
Compound verbs	81
<i>The Stag and the Lion</i>	84

Summary of Chapter Four grammar	86
Chapter Four vocabulary	87

Chapter Five 89

Accents	89
Third declension nouns	90
<i>Background: Homer and the Odyssey</i>	94
<i>The Cyclops (1)</i>	95
Elision	95
<i>The Cyclops (2)</i>	96
The uses of τίς/τις	98
<i>The Cyclops (3)</i>	103
Cases taken by prepositions	105
Personal pronouns and adjectives (first and second person singular)	107
<i>The Cyclops (4)</i>	109
Present participle (1)	110
<i>The Bag of Winds</i>	115
Summary of Chapter Five grammar	118
Chapter Five vocabulary	120

Chapter Six 121

Present participle (2)	121
<i>Background: Alexander the Great</i>	122
<i>Alexander and Bucephalus</i>	123
<i>Alexander Seeks Revenge</i>	126
More uses of the definite article (1)	126
More uses of the definite article (2)	128
<i>Alexander and Hope</i>	130
<i>Alexander at Troy</i>	132
The uses of αὐτός (1)	133
The uses of αὐτός (2)	134
<i>Alexander's Leadership</i>	135
Aorist participle (1)	136
The adjective πᾶς	138
<i>Alexander and the Gordian Knot (1)</i>	140
Aorist participle (2)	141
<i>Alexander and the Gordian Knot (2)</i>	143
Numerals	144
Expressing time (2)	146
The use of οὐδεὶς	148
<i>Alexander's Trust</i>	150

Personal pronouns and adjectives (first and second person plural)	151
Possessive dative	153
<i>Alexander's Kindness</i>	154
Future participle	155
Focusing the sense of participles	157
More uses of the definite article (3)	158
<i>Alexander's Ambition</i>	160
Round-up of verbs and their aorist formation	162
<i>Alexander and Dionysus</i>	166
<i>Alexander, Homer and Fame</i>	168
Summary of Chapter Six grammar	171
Chapter Six vocabulary	173
 <i>English–Greek practice sentences</i>	 174
<i>Reference Grammar</i>	179
The definite article	179
Nouns	179
First declension	179
Second declension	180
Third declension (pattern of endings)	180
Third declension (examples)	181
Adjectives	182
Pronouns	183
Numeral declensions	185
Prepositions	185
Verbs	186
Overview of tenses	186
The verb to be	186
Participles	187
<i>Appendix: Words easily confused</i>	188
<i>Glossary of grammar terms</i>	189
<i>English to Greek Vocabulary</i>	192
<i>Greek to English Vocabulary</i>	199
<i>Index</i>	206

PREFACE

This two-volume course has a simple aim: to provide a fast track to GCSE without compromise in the understanding of grammar, enabling students to read Greek with the confidence that is essential to enjoyment. It was written in response to a survey of about 100 schools undertaken by the Greek Committee of JACT (the former Joint Association of Classical Teachers, now part of the Classical Association) in 1999. It is designed especially for those with limited time (where Greek is an extra-curricular activity, or is taught within periods allocated to Latin). It concentrates on the essentials, the grammar and vocabulary required for GCSE Greek. It assumes that most readers will know some Latin, and does not eschew comparisons; but it aims to be usable without. It does not have any grand theory or linguistic dogma, but is simply based on experience of what pupils find difficult. It tries to remember that Greek is only one of nine or ten subjects being studied, yet at the same time to give a solid foundation for those who will carry on to A-level and beyond. The approach is fairly traditional: there is a mildly inductive element in that constructions that translate naturally (indirect commands, some forms of indirect statement) are introduced before they are discussed, but no apology is made for the fact that new grammar begins each chapter. Every year examiners' reports comment that candidates muddle through unseen passages with too little attention to grammar: endings are ignored, and common constructions not recognised. *Greek to GCSE* aims to address this. But it also aims to be user-friendly. It concentrates on the understanding of principles, in both accidence and syntax: minor irregularities are subordinated, so that the need for rote learning is reduced, and beginners are not distracted by archaic conventions. The book does not have a continuous narrative, but after the preliminaries each section concentrates on stories with one source or subject: in Part 1 Aesop, the *Odyssey*, Alexander the Great; in Part 2 Socrates and the Sophists, the world of myth, and in the final chapters (as the target of the whole course) extended passages of lightly adapted Herodotus, who has some of the best stories in Greek (or any) literature.

The course was first published in 2003. Two examination boards, AQA and OCR, then offered GCSE Greek, with a combined content significantly in excess of present requirements. AQA withdrew shortly afterwards, and OCR provided a new and streamlined specification. A slimmer second edition of Part 2 appeared in 2008. Both volumes now appear in a revised edition geared to the new GCSE (9–1). Part 2 is indeed still not very slim, but it can be shortened further in use: the GCSE vocabulary has all been covered by the end of Chapter Ten, and the grammar by halfway through Chapter Eleven, with the rest of Part 2 providing practice and consolidation. The 250-word learning vocabulary of Part 1 includes a handful of common words not strictly needed for GCSE. A few more are added in Part 2

(mainly to illustrate particular grammatical points), providing a total vocabulary of 435 words (GCSE requires just over 400). In the revision exercises that make up Chapter Twelve, and in the *Reference Grammar and Revision Guide* at the end of Part 2, the focus is entirely on GCSE requirements (hence a non-GCSE word is glossed even if it has frequently been used earlier). The four Practice Papers (adapted from recent GCSE papers by kind permission of OCR) closely follow the conventions of the new Language paper.

Provision for the new specification includes the optional English-Greek sentences, with restricted grammar requirements and a vocabulary of just under 100 words. Exercises in this style (and details of the requirements) are provided both in Part 1 and in Part 2. But (as in previous editions) English-Greek exercises are also provided throughout the book and for all constructions, in the belief that they are an invaluable means of clarifying and reinforcing pupils' understanding of the language. Because they move rapidly beyond the level of the sentences on GCSE papers, they are marked 'S&C' (for 'Stretch and Challenge'). They can of course simply be omitted, but it is hoped that pupils will not be deterred from attempting at least some of them.

A new book, *Greek Beyond GCSE*, was published simultaneously with the revised Part 2 in 2008. This (itself shortly to appear in a revised edition) includes some sections displaced from the original Part 2, together with a wide range of additional material, bringing students to a point where they can tackle original Greek texts with confidence.

General linguistic features in *Greek to GCSE* remain as before. Accents are introduced in Part 1 from Chapter Five, and in the Greek-English vocabulary; Part 2 has full accentuation throughout. The policy adopted (on an issue that divided respondents to the JACT survey more than any other) is inevitably a compromise: many felt that accents were an unnecessary complication in the earliest stages, when the priority is to recognise and write the letters and breathings correctly; yet the vocabulary and grammar required for unseen translation include words and forms where the accent materially affects the meaning, and GCSE candidates will of course study set texts printed with accents by universal convention. It is suggested that those wishing to make accents integral to the learning of vocabulary from the outset should insert them by hand in the checklists for the first few chapters. The rules of accentuation (even in outline) are beyond the scope of an accelerated GCSE course, and it is not expected that beginners should include accents in writing Greek sentences. Those seeking further information on this subject should consult Philomen Probert *A New Short Guide to the Accentuation of Ancient Greek* (Bloomsbury).

I incurred many debts in writing *Greek to GCSE*, and I have incurred more since it was first published. Chris Burnand tried out the earliest drafts in the classroom, and improved the wording of the explanations of grammar in numerous places. Subsequent versions were tested by teachers in fifteen schools (to whom I hope a generalised acknowledgement may now serve), and the trial copies were subsidised by a grant from the Society for the Promotion of Hellenic Studies, kindly negotiated by Russell Shone. Stephen Anderson, the late Chris Wilson and the late Malcolm Willcock gave generous help with accentuation and proof-reading of the first edition, and Andrew Goodson has kindly checked the accents this time. Since 2003 I have been contacted by numerous people using the book in school or for private study:

their encouraging feedback is much appreciated. Deborah Blake and Ray Davies at Duckworth nurtured the first edition, and Alice Wright at Bloomsbury has expertly guided this one. Readers may obtain keys to the exercises at the companion website www.bloomsbury.com/Taylor-Greek-to-GCSE. In the original preface I thanked the boys of Tonbridge School for pointing out mistakes in earlier versions with good-natured glee, but said they were bound to have missed some: they had, but I hope there are not too many more.

John Taylor

ILLUSTRATIONS

Map 1 Greece and the Aegean. xv

Map 2 The Empire of Alexander. xvi

- 1.1 The Annunciation by Fra Angelico. The Greek ἀγγελος, messenger, gives us our word ‘angel’. (Photo by The Print Collector/Print Collector/Getty Images.) 12
- 2.1 An imagined view of the Athenian Agora by a Spanish engraver, c. 1880. (Photo by Universal History Archive/UIG via Getty Images.) 24
- 3.1 Roman copy of an original Greek bust of Demosthenes. (Photo by Werner Forman Archive/Heritage Images/Getty Images.) 46
- 4.1 This 5th-century Attic red-figure vase shows the fox telling Aesop about animals. (Photo by De Agostini Picture Library/ via Getty Images.) 64
- 4.2 In later versions of Aesop’s fable, Zeus sent a stork instead of a watersnake, as depicted in this engraving. (Photo by Universal History Archive/UIG via Getty Images.) 69
- 4.3 Aesop’s fable of the Stag at the Pool. Engraving from an Italian 1485 edition. (Photo by Culture Club/Getty Images.) 84
- 5.1 Vase from an Etruscan tomb depicting Odysseus and his companions as they blind Polyphemus. (Photo by CM Dixon/Print Collector/Getty Images.) 103
- 5.2 French illustration of Aeolus giving Odysseus the bag of winds. (Photo by Leemage/UIG via Getty Images.) 115
- 6.1 A 15th-century Greek manuscript telling the history of Alexander the Great shown on this page with his horse Bucephalus. (Photo by Photo12/UIG/Getty Images.) 123
- 6.2 Alexander the Great cutting the Gordian Knot, shown in a 17th-century engraving. (Photo by Fine Art Images/Heritage Images/Getty Images.) 143
- 6.3 Detail from the Alexander Mosaic, which depicts the Battle of Issus between Alexander the Great and Darius III in 333 BC. (Photo by Roman/via Getty Images.) 168

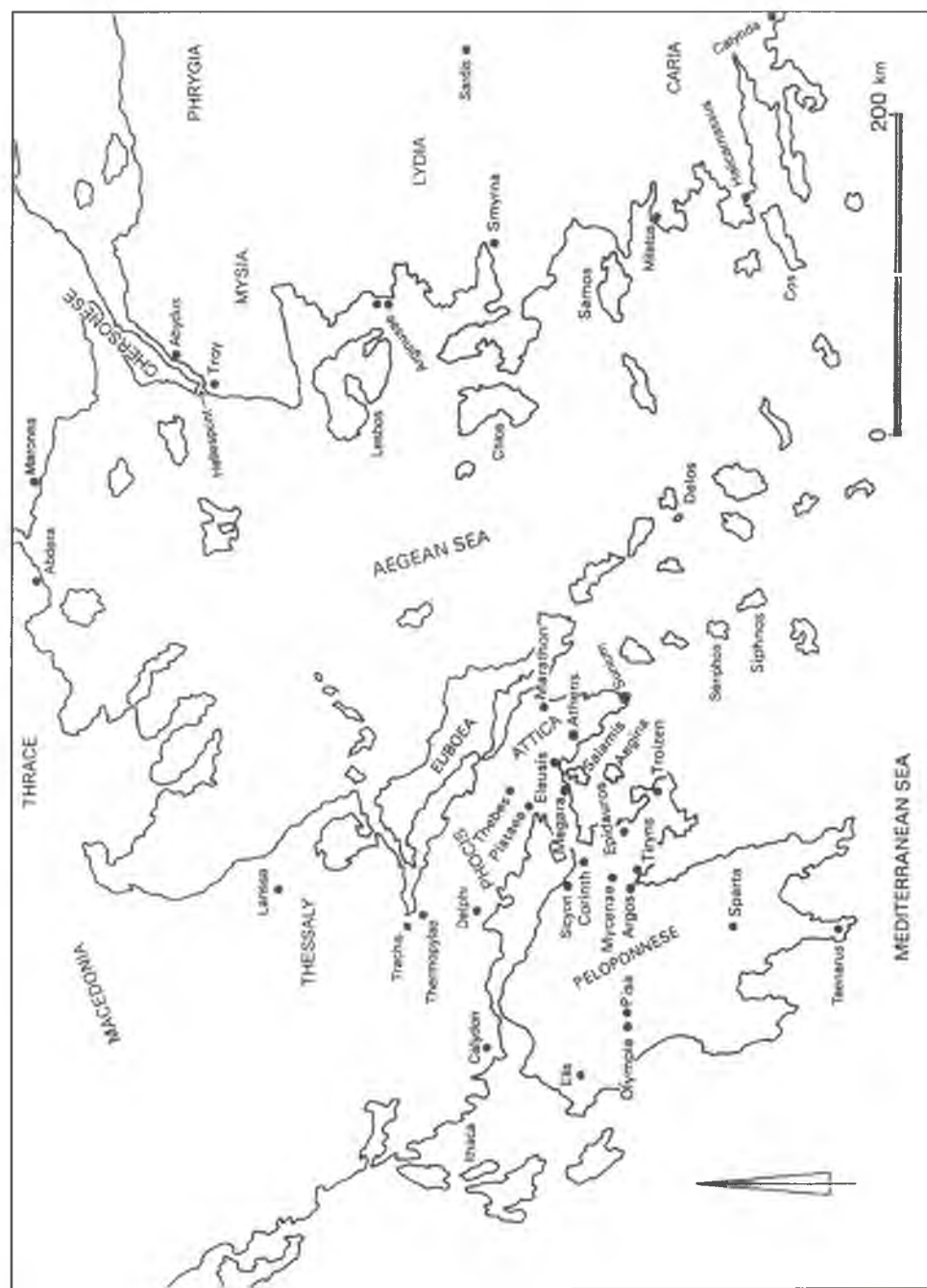
ABBREVIATIONS

<i>acc</i>	accusative
<i>adj</i>	adjective
<i>adv</i>	adverb
<i>aor</i>	aorist
<i>dat</i>	dative
<i>f</i>	femmine
<i>gen</i>	genitive
<i>irreg</i>	irregular
<i>m</i>	masculine
<i>n</i>	neuter
<i>nom</i>	nominative
<i>pl</i>	plural
<i>sg</i>	singular
<i>voc</i>	vocative

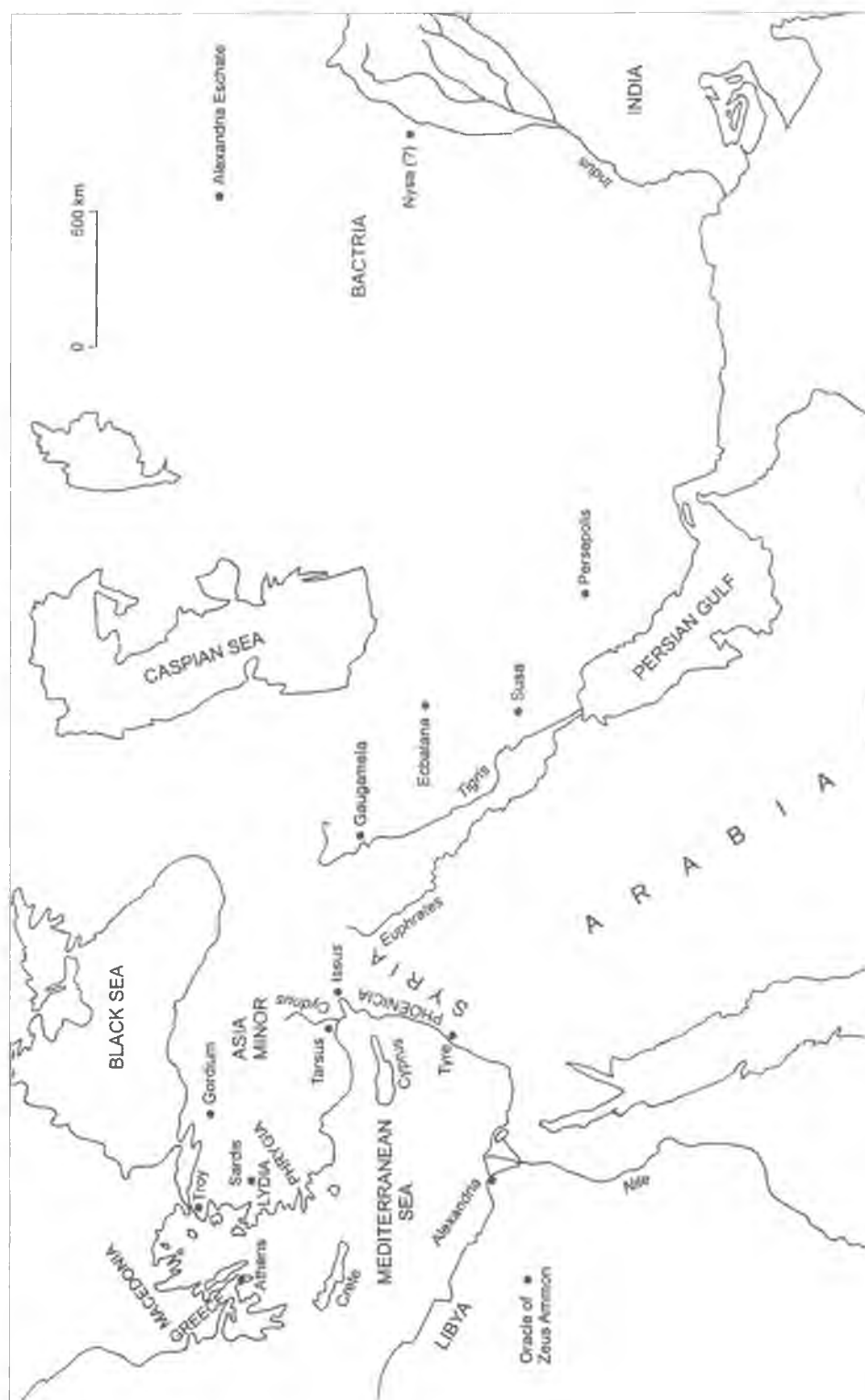
VOCABULARY AND GLOSSING

The vocabulary lists at the end of each chapter should be learned thoroughly. The sum of these equates to the vocabulary at the back of the book. Words shown in orange are needed for GCSE.

Additional words used in translation passages are glossed as they occur. Underlining is not repeated within a passage when a word occurs again on the same page. Where a passage extends to a new page, glossing (except of proper names) is usually repeated. This inevitably means that words are sometimes glossed twice in quick succession.



Map 1: Greece and the Aegean



Map 2: The Empire of Alexander

Chapter One

THE GREEK ALPHABET

The Greek alphabet has twenty-four letters:

<i>symbol</i>	<i>name</i>	<i>English equivalent</i>	<i>pronunciation</i>
α	alpha	a	short as in <i>bat</i> / long as in <i>father</i>
β	beta	b	b
γ	gamma	g	as in <i>get</i> **
δ	delta	d	d
ε	epsilon	e (short)	as in <i>get</i>
ζ	zeta	z, sd	as in <i>wisdom</i>
η	eta	e (long)	as in <i>hair</i>
θ	theta	th	as in <i>ant-hill</i> , or as in <i>third</i> †
ι	iota	i	short as in <i>bit</i> / long as in <i>police</i>
κ	kappa	c, k	k
λ	lambda	l	l
μ	mu	m	m
ν	nu	n	n
ξ	xi	x	x, ks
ο	omicron	o (short)	as in <i>got</i>
π	pi	p	p
ρ	rho	r	r
σ/ς*	sigma	s	s
τ	tau	t	t
υ	upsilon	u, y	short as in French <i>tu</i> / long as in <i>sur</i>
φ	phi	ph	as in <i>uphold</i> , or as in <i>phrase</i> †
χ	chi	ch	as in <i>packhorse</i> , or as in <i>loch</i> †
ψ	psi	ps	as in <i>lapse</i>
ω	omega	o (long)	between the sounds in <i>oar</i> and in <i>raw</i>

*σ normally, ς at the end of a word: e.g. *στασις*

** gamma is pronounced as *n* rather than *g* when it comes before another gamma or before a *k* sound (kappa, xi or chi)

† with the *aspirated* ('breathed-on') consonants theta, phi and chi, the first pronunciation given (like *t*, *p* and *k* with emphatic breathing) represents more

accurately the sound in classical times; but the second (with stronger *h* element), standard in later Greek, may be found more convenient in practice (to avoid confusion with the unaspirated tau, pi and kappa)

No recommendations about pronunciation command universal agreement. Our knowledge of ancient pronunciation is imperfect. Regional and other variations in the pronunciation of English complicate the attempt to provide equivalents. You should of course aim to be as accurate as possible; but being consistent, confident and clear is very important too.

WRITING THE LETTERS

Most of the letters can be made with one stroke of the pen. But each letter is written separately: they are not joined in a cursive script. You should write them all several times, until you are familiar with them. Notice which go below the line. And be careful to differentiate between ones that can be confused if carelessly written: e.g. zeta and xi, nu and upsilon.

VOWELS

There are seven vowels ($\alpha \epsilon \eta \iota \omicron \upsilon \omega$) rather than English five, because Greek uses different symbols for short and long *e* (epsilon and eta) and for short and long *o* (omicron and omega). The other vowels too can be short or long, but without separate symbols.

BREATHINGS

Any word starting with a vowel must have a *breathing* over the vowel: either a *rough* breathing (') to indicate an *h* sound before the vowel, or a *smooth* breathing (̣) simply to indicate the absence of an *h*. The breathing is important and counts as part of the spelling.

DIPHTHONGS

Greek (like English) can combine vowels into *diphthongs*, pronounced as one sound. Common ones are:

$\alpha\iota$	pronounced as in	<i>high</i>
$\alpha\upsilon$		<i>how</i>
$\epsilon\iota$		<i>weigh</i>
$\epsilon\upsilon$		<i>feud</i>
$\omicron\iota$		<i>boy</i>
$\omicron\upsilon$		<i>pool</i>

When a diphthong starts a word, the breathing is put over the second of the two vowels.

IOTA SUBSCRIPT

When iota comes after long alpha, eta or omega, it is written in miniature form underneath: α η ω. It is not certain how far it was pronounced in classical times, but it is convenient to sound it slightly (to differentiate α from ordinary long alpha on the one hand, and from the diphthong αι on the other).

Background: History of the Greek Alphabet

- The Greek language is a lot older than the use of this alphabet. This alphabet was first used to write Greek about 750 BC.
- Long before that, there had been a completely different way of writing Greek, called 'Linear B'. This is found on clay tablets dating from about 1300 BC, found in various parts of Greece.
- The name Linear B naturally implies the existence of a Linear A. The names were given to two different scripts found by archaeologists in the late nineteenth century. Linear A was used in Crete from about 1700 BC. It has never been deciphered. It is probably a pre-Greek language.
- Linear B was deciphered (after many people had tried), and shown to be an early form of Greek, by Michael Ventris in 1952. The Linear B tablets listed goods stored in the fortresses of Bronze Age or Mycenaean Greece – named after the great fortress at Mycenae, traditionally the headquarters of Agamemnon, which had been excavated by the German archaeologist Heinrich Schliemann in the 1870s. Ventris was helped by the fact that many of the tablets had diagrams as well as words indicating the items (e.g. chariot-wheels) listed.
- Mycenaean civilisation declined after about 1200 BC: Greece entered a Dark Age, and the art of writing was forgotten.
- In the eighth century Greece emerged into a new period of prosperity and success. Travel, exploration and trade flourished. The Greeks seem to have borrowed the alphabet from the Phoenicians, with whom they traded. But it was simply a set of symbols. In Phoenician the symbols had had quite different meanings, standing for syllables or whole words (e.g. Phoenician *alph* meant *ox*, and *bet* meant *house* – and perhaps in origin the symbols were simplified pictures of those things).
- Whoever allocated the symbols to the various sounds needed to pronounce Greek made a far-reaching decision. Apart from having one or two extra or variant letters in different parts of the Greek world in early times, the Greek alphabet has remained essentially the same. And it underlies, of course, our own alphabet.

- Linear B had, as far as we know, been used only for records, not for literature. But the introduction of the Greek alphabet in the eighth century seems to have coincided with the lifetime of Homer, author of the *Iliad* and *Odyssey*. The stories had been transmitted orally for perhaps 400 years. It may be a lucky chance that writing became available to record permanently the works of a master poet – or it may be that he was stimulated by the new medium to compose poems of unprecedented length and sophistication.
- Not only the alphabet, but the language itself has remained remarkably constant. Most of the ancient Greek **texts** we commonly read come from the fifth century BC (when Homer was already a ‘classic’). Greek has changed less in the 2500 years since then than English has in the 700 years since Chaucer. Pronunciation has changed a bit, but speakers of modern Greek can read ancient texts reasonably well without special training – and people who have studied ancient Greek can usually make sense of notices when they go to Greece.

TRANSLITERATION

This means not translating but simply writing the same word in a different script. Because a lot of Greek words have come directly into English, there are many examples to practise with.

Before you start, remember:

- kappa can be either *c* or *k*
- both epsilon and eta come out as *e*, and both omicron and omega come out as *o*

Exercise 1.1

Transliterate:

- 1 ιδεα
- 2 κινημα
- 3 χαρακτηρ
- 4 ηλεκτρον
- 5 κομμα
- 6 χαος
- 7 διαγνωσις
- 8 κρατηρ
- 9 κριτηριον
- 10 πανθηρ

This can also be done the other way round, putting English words that are originally Greek back into Greek. Remember the breathing on words starting with a vowel, and the variant sigma for the end of a word. And beware of the places where two English letters are represented by one Greek one (e.g. *th*).

Exercise 1.2

Transliterate:

- 1 drama
- 2 basis
- 3 asthma
- 4 dogma (*short o*)
- 5 crisis
- 6 plasma
- 7 asbestos (*short e and short o*)
- 8 climax
- 9 nectar (*short e*)
- 10 parenthesis (*short e both times*)

Exercise 1.3 (Revision)

Transliterate:

- 1 διπλωμα
- 2 όριζων
- 3 ίσοσκελης
- 4 έμφασις
- 5 κωλον
- 6 άμβροσια
- 7 καταστροφη
- 8 άντιθεσις
- 9 βακτηρια
- 10 μητροπολις

CAPITAL LETTERS

Many of the capital letters can be deduced if you have learned the lower case ones. To prove this, here are the names of some Greek gods and heroes. Notice that where the name starts with a vowel, the breathing is written just in front of it.

Exercise 1.4

Transliterate:

- 1 Ζεύς
- 2 Θησεύς
- 3 Ποσειδών
- 4 Ἀγαμέμνων
- 5 Ὀδυσσεύς
- 6 Ἑρμῆς
- 7 Ἀφροδίτη
- 8 Προμηθεύς
- 9 Ἑκτώρ
- 10 Ἀρτεμῖς

Here are the capital letters for the whole alphabet:

Α	α	alpha	Ν	ν	nu
Β	β	beta	Ξ	ξ	xi
Γ	γ	gamma	Ο	ο	omicron
Δ	δ	delta	Π	π	pi
Ε	ε	epsilon	Ρ	ρ	rho
Ζ	ζ	zeta	Σ	σ/ς	sigma
Η	η	eta	Τ	τ	tau
Θ	θ	theta	Υ	υ	upsilon
Ι	ι	iota	Φ	φ	phi
Κ	κ	kappa	Χ	χ	chi
Λ	λ	lambda	Ψ	ψ	psi
Μ	μ	mu	Ω	ω	omega

- The capital letters are used only for proper names (not to begin a sentence, as in English).
- Many of them are similar to the lower case letters. (In the fifth century BC, when many of the major Greek authors were writing, there was no distinction: everything was written in capitals. The lower case letters are in origin hastily written/simplified versions of the capitals.)

- Since you see the capital letters much less often, they take a bit longer to get used to. Some are actually easier (or more like English) than the lower case form: e.g. zeta. Others have misleading similarities to other English letters, and should be noted carefully: e.g. eta, rho. The similarity of capital upsilon to English γ however is a reminder that upsilon is often transliterated as γ . Gamma and lambda, or delta and lambda, in their capital forms are often confused by beginners.
- Capital delta can be remembered by thinking how *delta* is used in English (e.g. of the Nile), from its shape. How many other Greek letters are used in English, and how do their English meanings come about? How many were familiar to you already? (*Beta* particles, *gamma* rays, an *iota* of difference, *pi* as about 3.14159 – *the Alpha and the Omega*? Why is an American student association called *Phi Beta Kappa*?)

Exercise 1.5 (Revision)

Some more gods and figures from myth.

Transliterate:

- 1 Δημήτηρ
- 2 Μίδας
- 3 Άρης
- 4 Ηρακλής
- 5 Άνδρομαχη
- 6 Αθήνη
- 7 Ηρα
- 8 Περσεφονη
- 9 Κυκλωψ
- 10 Διονυσος*

* the Greek ending -ος corresponds to the Latin *-us*, which is normally used when transliterating familiar names (that came to us via Latin) into English

Exercise 1.6 (Revision)

Both ways round. Remember upsilon usually transliterates as *y*, and that breathing goes on second letter if Greek word starts with a diphthong.

Transliterate:

- 1 ὄρχηστρα
- 2 mania
- 3 ἦχω
- 4 aroma (*long o*)
- 5 ἀναλυσις
- 6 automaton (*short o both times*)
- 7 σκηνη
- 8 iris
- 9 παραλυσις
- 10 genesis (*short e both times*)

THE VERB: PRESENT TENSE

As in other languages, we use the terms *first*, *second* and *third person* for *I* (plural *we*), *you* (plural also *you*), and *he/she/it* (plural *they*).

παυω I stop (compare English *pause*)

sg	1	παυ-ω	I stop
	2	παυ-εις	you (<i>singular</i>) stop
	3	παυ-ει	he/she/it stops
pl	1	παυ-ομεν	we stop
	2	παυ-ετε	you (<i>plural</i>) stop
	3	παυ-ουσι(ν)*	they stop

* the nu – often called ‘movable nu’ – is added (to make pronunciation easier) if the next word starts with a vowel, or if this is the last word in the sentence

- The part of the verb that stays the same is called the *stem*. Hyphens will be used initially to show the division between stem and ending.
- Note the similarities to basic Latin endings (-o, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt): only the third persons seem unrelated to them (and even here the plural -ουσι seems to have replaced an original form -οντι [compare Latin -nt], which has changed first to -ονσι and eventually to -ουσι).
- The vast majority of Greek verbs go like this. There is just one main conjugation.

Here are ten common verbs, which should be learned:

1	ἄγω	I lead
2	ακουω	I hear
3	βαινω	I go
4	γραφω	I write
5	διδασκω	I teach
6	διωκω	I chase
7	έχω	I have
8	τρεχω	I run
9	φερω	I carry, I bring
10	φυλασσω*	I guard

* Greek words containing σσ can also be written with ττ, so this verb could also be φυλαττω (some places and some authors used one, some the other): σσ will be used in this book.

Exercise 1.7

Pay careful attention to the person endings. With second persons, indicate e.g. ‘you (sg)’ - *sg* and *pl* are the usual abbreviations for *singular* and *plural*.

Translate into English:

- 1 φερ-ομεν
- 2 γραφ-ει
- 3 διωκ-εις
- 4 ἄγ-ετε
- 5 φυλασσ-ουσι(ν)
- 6 έχ-ομεν
- 7 τρεχ-ει
- 8 ακου-εις
- 9 βαιν-ετε
- 10 διδασκ-ομεν

Exercise 1.8

Translate into Greek:

- 1 He carries.
- 2 We write.
- 3 You (sg) guard.
- 4 He teaches.
- 5 You (pl) have.
- 6 I hear.
- 7 You (sg) run.
- 8 They lead.
- 9 We chase.
- 10 You (pl) stop.

Exercise 1.9 (Revision)

Translate into English:

- 1 τρεχ-ουσι(ν)
- 2 διδασκ-ετε
- 3 βαiv-ει
- 4 παυ-ομεν
- 5 φυλασσ-ετε
- 6 παυ-εις
- 7 γραφ-ουσι(ν)
- 8 αγ-ω
- 9 διωκ-ει
- 10 φερ-ετε

REVISION CHECKPOINT

Make sure you know:

- the alphabet
- how breathings are used
- the person endings for the present tense:

-ω	I
-εις	you (sg)
-ει	he/she/it
-ομεν	we
-ετε	you (pl)
-ουσι(ν)	they

NOUNS (FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION): Nominative and Accusative

first declension feminine:

τιμη = honour

sg	<i>nominative</i>	τιμη
	<i>accusative</i>	τιμην

second declension masculine:

λογος = word (also reason, story)

sg	<i>nominative</i>	λογος
	<i>accusative</i>	λογον

- As with verbs, it is important to distinguish the stem (which stays the same) from the ending (which changes). Again hyphens are used initially.
- ‘Declension’ refers to the group a noun belongs to and the way its endings change. As in Latin, the nominative case is used for the subject of a verb and the accusative for the object. These nouns roughly correspond to ones like *puella* and *servus*. Notice that -v is the characteristic ending for the accusative singular, as -m is in Latin.

Ten common nouns like τιμη:

1	βοη	shout	6	κορη	girl
2	βουλη	plan, also council	7	κωμη	village
3	γη	earth	8	νικη	victory
4	ειρηνη	peace	9	πυλη	gate
5	επιστολη	letter	10	φωνη	voice

- Words printed in black rather than orange are not strictly needed for GCSE.



Figure 1.1 *The Annunciation by Fra Angelico. The Greek ἄγγελος, messenger, gives us our word ‘angel’.* (Photo by The Print Collector/Print Collector/Getty Images.)

Ten common nouns like λογος:

1	ἄγγελος	messenger
2	διδασκαλος	teacher
3	δουλος	slave
4	θεος	god
5	ἵππος	horse
6	ξενος	stranger, foreigner
7	ποταμος	river
8	στρατηγος*	general, commander
9	στρατος	army
10	συμμαχος	ally

* made up of στρατος + ἄγω, hence literally *army leader*

THE DEFINITE ARTICLE

This is the word for *the*. Latin has no equivalent, but in Greek it is very important. If there is no article, translate *a*: e.g. ὁ δούλος = *the slave*, δούλος = *a slave*.

<i>masculine</i>	<i>nominative</i>	ὁ
	<i>accusative</i>	τον
<i>feminine</i>	<i>nominative</i>	ἡ
	<i>accusative</i>	την

- Notice the similarity to the noun endings. Again -v marks the accusative.

WORD ORDER

This is much more flexible than in Latin. The verb need not come at the end, though it can.

Exercise 1.10

Translate into English:

- 1 ἀκου-ω την βο-ην.
- 2 ὁ ἀγγελ-ος διωκ-ει τον δουλ-ον.
- 3 ὁ στρατ-ος φυλασσ-ει τον ποταμ-ον.
- 4 ὁ ξεν-ος ἐπιστολ-ην γραφ-ει.
- 5 ὁ ἱππ-ος φερ-ει τον δουλ-ον.
- 6 φυλασσ-ομεν την κωμ-ην.
- 7 διδασκ-εις την κορ-ην.
- 8 ὁ δουλ-ος φυλασσ-ει την πυλ-ην.
- 9 ἡ κορ-η την ἐπιστολ-ην φερ-ει.
- 10 ὁ διδασκαλ-ος διδασκ-ει τον δουλ-ον.

NEGATIVE

The normal negative is ου. This changes (to help pronunciation) to ουκ if the next word starts with a vowel with a smooth breathing, and to ουχ if the next word starts with a vowel with a rough breathing (the aspiration or 'breathed on' quality here spreading from the rough breathing to the preceding consonant). The negative normally comes just before the verb.

Exercise 1.11

Translate into English:

- 1 ὁ στρατηγ-ος βουλ-ην οὐκ ἔχ-ει.
- 2 ὁ θε-ος την τιμ-ην* ἔχ-ει.
- 3 ὁ δουλ-ος οὐκ ἀκου-ει την φων-ην.
- 4 ὁ ἀγγελ-ος διωκ-ει τον ἵππ-ον.
- 5 ὁ ξεν-ος φερ-ει την ἐπιστολ-ην.
- 6 την πυλ-ην οὐ φυλασσ-εις.
- 7 ἡ γ-η την εἰρην-ην* οὐκ ἔχ-ει.
- 8 συμμαχ-ον οὐκ ἔχ-ετε.
- 9 ὁ διδασκαλ-ος λογ-ον οὐ λεγ-ει.
- 10 ὁ θε-ος την νικ-ην* φερ-ει.

λεγω I speak, I say

* Greek often uses the definite article for general or abstract qualities, where English would not use *the*. In (2) and (7) here, *the* would be wrong with *honour* and *peace*; in (10), it would be correct to say either *victory* (in general) or *the* (particular) *victory*.

PREPOSITIONS

- Prepositions indicating motion towards take the accusative, as in Latin. Two common ones are:

προς	towards
εις	into

Exercise 1.12

Translate into English:

- 1 ὁ στρατ-ος προς τον ποταμ-ον βαιν-ει.
- 2 ὁ θε-ος φων-ην οὐκ ἔχ-ει.
- 3 τον ἵππ-ον εις την κωμ-ην ἀγ-ω.
- 4 ἡ κορ-η την πυλ-ην οὐ φυλασσ-ει.
- 5 ὁ στρατηγ-ος τον στρατ-ον προς την κωμ-ην ἀγ-ει.
- 6 τον δουλ-ον προς τον ποταμ-ον διωκ-ω.
- 7 ὁ δουλ-ος εις τον ποταμ-ον τρεχ-ει.
- 8 ὁ διδασκαλ-ος διδασκ-ει την κορ-ην.
- 9 την ἐπιστολ-ην προς την κωμ-ην φερ-ω.
- 10 ὁ θε-ος προς την γ-ην βαιν-ει.

Exercise 1.13

Give one English derivative from:

- 1 γραφω
- 2 φωνη
- 3 ακουω
- 4 γη
- 5 στρατηγος

Exercise 1.14

Translate into English:

- 1 ό άγγελ-ος προς την κωμ-ην τρεχ-ει. επιστολ-ην φερ-ει. ή βουλ-η τον λογ-ον άκου-ει. ό στρατ-ος νικ-ην έχ-ει.
- 2 ό ξεν-ος τον δουλ-ον διωκ-ει. ό δουλ-ος προς τον ποταμ-ον τρεχ-ει. ό ποταμ-ος τον δουλ-ον παυ-ει. ό ξεν-ος τον δουλ-ον φυλασσ-ει.
- 3 ό στρατηγ-ος τον στρατ-ον άγ-ει. ό στρατ-ος προς την κωμ-ην βαιν-ει. ό στρατηγ-ος φων-ην άκου-ει. ό θε-ος λογ-ον λεγ-ει. ό θε-ος την ειρην-ην φερ-ει. ή κωμ-η ειρην-ην έχ-ει. ό θε-ος τιμ-ην έχ-ει.

REVISION CHECKPOINT

Make sure you know:

- the present tense
- the nominative and accusative of nouns like τιμη and λογος

SUMMARY OF CHAPTER ONE GRAMMAR

The Greek alphabet

Pronunciation, relation to English, and how to write the letters.

Vowels: seven, because Greek has separate letters for short and long *e* (epsilon and eta) and for short and long *o* (omicron and omega).

Breathings (on words starting with a vowel): rough (e.g. ἄ = *ha*) and smooth (e.g. ᾶ = *a*)

Diphthongs: two vowels sounded together (e.g. αἰ); if a diphthong begins a word, the breathing comes on the second vowel.

Iota subscript: iota following long alpha, eta or omega is written in miniature form underneath (e.g. αῖ).

Capital letters (used only for proper names) and their relation to lower case ones.

Present tense of παύω

First, second and third persons, singular and plural.

Endings: -ω, -εις, -ει, -ομεν, -ετε, -ουσι(ν).

First and second declension nouns

Nominative and accusative singular of first declension nouns like τιμή (*honour*, accusative τιμην) and λόγος (*word*, accusative λογον).

The definite article

Singular forms of the definite article (*the*): masculine nominative ὁ, accusative τον, and feminine nominative ἡ, accusative την. The article is used where English uses *the* and also for abstract qualities, e.g. ἡ εἰρήνη (*peace*).

Negative

The negative οὐ (*not*) changes to οὐκ before a vowel with a smooth breathing, and to οὐχ before a vowel with a rough breathing.

Prepositions

Prepositions indicating motion towards, e.g. πρὸς (*towards*) and εἰς (*into*), are followed by the accusative.

CHAPTER ONE VOCABULARY

Words needed for GCSE are shown in orange. A few other important and common words that should also be learned are shown in black. Nouns are given with the appropriate form of the definite article as it is important to learn their gender.

ἄγγελος	ὁ	messenger
ἄγω		I lead
ἀκούω		I hear
βαίνω		I go
βοη	ἡ	shout
βουλή	ἡ	plan, council
γῆ	ἡ	earth
γράφω		I write
διδασκαλός	ὁ	teacher
διδάσκω		I teach
διώκω		I chase
δούλος	ὁ	slave
εἰρήνη	ἡ	peace
εἰς		into (+ acc)
ἐπιστολή	ἡ	letter
ἔχω		I have
ἡ		the (<i>feminine nom</i>)
θεός	ὁ	god
ἵππος	ὁ	horse
κορη	ἡ	girl
κωμή	ἡ	village
λέγω		I say, I speak
λόγος	ὁ	word, reason, story
νίκη	ἡ	victory
ξένος	ὁ	stranger, foreigner
ὁ		the (<i>masculine nom</i>)
οὐ (οὐκ, οὐχ)		not
παύω		I stop
ποταμός	ὁ	river
πρός		towards (+ acc)
πύλη	ἡ	gate
στρατηγός	ὁ	general
στράτος	ὁ	army
σύμμαχος	ὁ	ally
την		the (<i>feminine acc</i>)
τιμή	ἡ	honour
τον		the (<i>masculine acc</i>)
τρέχω		I run
φέρω		I carry, I bring
φυλάσσω		I guard
φωνή	ἡ	voice

Chapter Two

NOUNS (FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION): Nominative and Accusative Plural

first declension feminine:

τιμή honour

sg	nom	τιμή
	acc	τιμήν
pl	nom	τιμαί
	acc	τιμας

second declension masculine:

λογος word (*also* reason, story)

sg	nom	λογος
	acc	λογον
pl	nom	λογοί
	acc	λογους

- Notice the similarities to Latin (*puellae, puellas; domini, dominos*).

The definite article forms its plurals in a similar way:

		<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>
sg	nom	ο	η
	acc	τον	την
pl	nom	οι	αί
	acc	τους	τας

Ten more verbs:

1	ἀποκτείνω	I kill	6	μανθάνω	I learn
2	εὕρισκω	I find	7	μένω	I stay, I remain
3	λαμβάνω	I take	8	πέμπω	I send
4	λείπω	I leave	9	τάσσω	I draw up, I arrange
5	λύω	I release, I untie	10	φεύγω	I flee, I run away

Exercise 2.1

Translate into English:

- 1 ὁ ἀγγέλ-ος οὐκ ἀκου-ει τας βο-ας.
- 2 οἱ δουλ-οι φευγ-ουσιν.
- 3 ὁ ξεν-ος ἐπιστολ-ας πρὸς τὴν κωμ-ὴν πεμπ-ει.
- 4 τοὺς λογ-ους μανθαν-ετε.
- 5 ὁ ποταμ-ος οὐ παυ-ει τὸν στρατ-ον.
- 6 τοὺς ἵππ-ους πρὸς τὸν ποταμ-ον διωκ-ομεν
- 7 ἀποκτειν-εις τοὺς δουλ-ους.
- 8 ὁ ἵππ-ος εὕρισκ-ει τὸν ποταμ-ον.
- 9 ὁ στρατηγ-ος τὸν στρατ-ον τασσ-ει.
- 10 οἱ συμμαχ-οι τοὺς ἵππ-ους οὐ λειπ-ουσιν.

Exercise 2.2

Translate into English:

- 1 ὁ δουλ-ος τὴν ἐπιστολ-ὴν λαμβαν-ει.
- 2 τὸν ἵππ-ον πρὸς τὸν ποταμ-ον διωκ-ετε.
- 3 οἱ συμμαχ-οι τὸν ξεν-ον ἀποκτειν-ουσιν.
- 4 τὸν στρατ-ον τασσ-ετε.
- 5 αἱ κορ-αι πρὸς τὴν κωμ-ὴν φευγ-ουσιν.
- 6 ὁ διδασκαλ-ος τοὺς λογ-ους διδασκ-ει.
- 7 ὁ στρατ-ος τὴν εἰρην-ὴν φυλασσ-ει.
- 8 τὴν νικ-ὴν ἐχ-ομεν.
- 9 οἱ θε-οι τὴν εἰρην-ὴν φερ-ουσιν.
- 10 τὸν ἵππ-ον λυ-εις.

REVISION CHECKPOINT

Make sure you know:

- the nominative and accusative (*sg and pl*) of τιμη
- the nominative and accusative (*sg and pl*) of λογος
- the nominative and accusative (*sg and pl*) masculine and feminine of the definite article

Exercise 2.3 (Revision)

Translate into English:

- 1 βαιν-ετε
- 2 λειπ-ομεν
- 3 φυλασσο-ει
- 4 αγ-ουσι(v)
- 5 παυ-ετε
- 6 πεμπ-ω
- 7 ευρισκ-ει
- 8 τρεχ-ομεν
- 9 εχ-εις
- 10 τασσο-ουσι(v)

Exercise 2.4 (Revision)

Translate into Greek:

- 1 We carry.
- 2 They find.
- 3 He takes.
- 4 I remain.
- 5 You (*sg*) teach.
- 6 You (*pl*) learn.
- 7 They send.
- 8 I lead.
- 9 You (*sg*) write.
- 10 He goes.

Exercise 2.5 (Revision)

Change these combinations of noun + article into the plural, keeping the same case:

- 1 ὁ ἵππ-ος
- 2 ἡ πυλ-η
- 3 τον δουλ-ον
- 4 την κωμ-ην
- 5 ὁ ποταμ-ος
- 6 την νικ-ην
- 7 τον θε-ον
- 8 ὁ στρατηγ-ος
- 9 τον συμμαχ-ον
- 10 ἡ ἐπιστολ-η

Exercise 2.6 (Revision)

Change these combinations of noun + article into the singular, keeping the same case:

- 1 οἱ θε-οι
- 2 τας ἐπιστολ-ας
- 3 τους ἀγγελ-ους
- 4 αἱ κωμ-αι
- 5 τους ἵππ-ους

Exercise 2.7

Translate into English:

- ὁ στρατηγ-ος τον στρατ-ον τασσ-ει. ὁ στρατ-ος προς τον ποταμ-ον
 βαιν-ει. ὁ στρατ-ος μεν-ει. τους ἵππ-ους λυ-ουσιν. οἱ συμμαχ-οι τους
 ἵππ-ους φυλασσ-ουσιν. οἱ δουλ-οι φων-ην ἀκου-ουσιν. κωμ-ην
 εὕρισκ-ουσιν. ὁ στρατηγ-ος τον στρατ-ον προς την κωμ-ην ἀγ-ει. ὁ
 5 στρατ-ος την κωμ-ην λαμβαν-ει. ὁ στρατ-ος νικ-ην ἔχ-ει.

THE VERB *TO BE*: Present Tense

As in most languages, this is irregular, but will quickly become familiar:

sg	1	εἰμι	I am
	2	εἶ	you (sg) are
	3	ἐστί(ν)*	he/she/it is
pl	1	ἐσμεν	we are
	2	ἐστε	you (pl) are
	3	εἰσι(ν)*	they are

* again the ‘movable nu’ is added (to make pronunciation easier) if the next word starts with a vowel, or if this is the last word in the sentence: notice that here this applies to the third person singular as well as the third person plural

- Notice the slight similarity to the Latin equivalent (*sum, es, est, sumus, estis, sunt*). Notice also that the -μεν and -τε endings resemble the equivalent parts of παύω.
- The verb *to be* takes not an object (in the accusative) but a *complement* (another nominative): distinguish between

ὁ ξεν-ος δουλ-ον διωκ-ει.
The stranger chases a slave.

and

ὁ ξεν-ος δουλ-ος ἐστιν.
The stranger is a slave.

In the second sentence the stranger is not doing something *to* a slave; we are just being told that he *is* a slave.

Exercise 2.8

Translate into English:

- 1 συμμαχ-οι ἐσμεν.
- 2 ὁ ἀγγελ-ος δουλ-ος ἐστιν.*
- 3 διδασκαλ-ος εἶ.
- 4 οἱ ξεν-οι συμμαχ-οι εἰσιν.*
- 5 δουλ-ος οὐκ εἰμι.

* The word order helps you decide which noun is the subject and which is the complement. Also, the subject usually has the definite article but the complement does not.

Exercise 2.9

Translate into Greek:

- 1 I am a messenger.
- 2 We are not slaves.
- 3 You (sg) are a general.
- 4 The stranger is a god.
- 5 You (pl) are slaves.

CONNECTING WORDS

The following are very common:

και	and
τε* . . . και	both . . . and
ἀλλά	but

* This comes *second word in a phrase*, after the first (or only) word referring to the first of the two items being joined: e.g.

ό τε δουλος και ό ξενος both the slave and the stranger

If the first item consists of just one word, τε and και end up next to each other:

δουλος τε και ξενος both a slave and a stranger

Exercise 2.10

Translate into English:

- 1 ό τε ξεν-ος και ό άγγελ-ος συμμαχ-οι εισιν.
- 2 ό στρατ-ος ού μεν-ει άλλα φευγ-ει.
- 3 άποκτειν-ομεν τους τε δουλ-ους και τους ξεν-ους.
- 4 ό διδασκαλ-ος γραφ-ει τε και λεγ-ει.
- 5 ή κορ-η άκου-ει και φευγ-ει.
- 6 ό θε-ος διδασκαλ-ος έστιν.
- 7 οί συμμαχ-οι ού τασσ-ουσι τον στρατ-ον.
- 8 οί δουλ-οι ού λυ-ουσι τους ίππ-ους.
- 9 οί ξεν-οι συμμαχ-οι ούκ εισιν, άλλα τας πυλ-ας φυλασσ-ουσιν.
- 10 διδασκ-ω τε και μανθαν-ω.

FIRST DECLENSION NOUNS: VARIANT PATTERN

If the stem ends in iota or rho, the singular endings usually* have alpha instead of eta (the plurals still have alpha):

χωρᾶ land, country

<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	χωρ-α
	<i>acc</i>	χωρ-αν

<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	χωρ-αι
	<i>acc</i>	χωρ-ας

- Notice that this is even closer to Latin (*puella, puellam; puellae, puellas*).

* κορη is an exception



Figure 2.1 An imagined view of the Athenian Agora by a Spanish engraver, c. 1880. (Photo by Universal History Archive/UIG via Getty Images.)

Ten nouns like χώρα:

1	ἀγορά	agora, market-place, public square	6	θύρα	door
2	ἐκκλησία	assembly	7	ναυμαχία	sea-battle
3	ἔσπερα	evening	8	οἰκία	house
4	ἡμέρα	day	9	σοφία	wisdom
5	θεά	goddess	10	ώρα	hour

Exercise 2.11

Translate into English:

- 1 πρὸς τὴν ἀγορὰν βαίνουμεν.
- 2 ἡ θεὰ τὴν σοφίαν διδάσκει.
- 3 ἡ ναυμαχία τὴν νικτὴν φέρει.
- 4 ἡ οἰκία θυρᾶς οὐκ ἔχει.
- 5 ἡ ἔσπερα τὴν ἐκκλησίαν παύει.

Exercise 2.12

Change these combinations of noun + article into the singular, keeping the same case:

- 1 αἱ ναυμαχίαι
- 2 τὰς ὥρας
- 3 αἱ ἐπιστολαί
- 4 τὰς ἡμέρας
- 5 αἱ οἰκαί

Ten more nouns like λόγος:

1	ἄνθρωπος	man, human being
2	βίος	life
3	δημός	people, community
4	θάνατος	death
5	κίνδυνος	danger
6	νόμος	law, <i>also</i> custom
7	πόλεμος	war
8	φίλος	friend
9	φόβος	fear
10	χρόνος	time

TRANSLATION OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE

As already noted, the definite article in Greek is sometimes used where *the* would not sound natural in English. As well as *abstract qualities* (*wisdom, honour*), the article is used for *general classes* (so οἱ δούλοι could mean *slaves* as a category, rather than *the slaves* i.e. the particular ones mentioned). In these instances it should not be translated. (Sometimes it is difficult to decide, in which case it is correct either to include *the* or to leave it out.)

Exercise 2.13

Translate into English:

- 1 ο δημ-ος νομ-ους ἔχ-ει.
- 2 οἱ ἀνθρ-ωπ-οι ου μα-νθ-αν-ουσι την σοφ-ι-αν.
- 3 ο χρ-ον-ος τους ἀνθρ-ωπ-ους διδ-ασκ-ει.
- 4 ἡ ἐσπερ-α παυ-ει την ναυμαχ-ι-αν.
- 5 ἡ θυρ-α την οικ-ι-αν φυλασσ-ει.
- 6 ἡ κορ-η φιλ-ον ἔχ-ει.
- 7 ὁ κινδυν-ος μεν-ει.
- 8 ὁ φοβ-ος τον στρατ-ον λαμβαν-ει.
- 9 ἡ ναυμαχ-ι-α τον πολεμ-ον παυ-ει.
- 10 ὁ θε-ος την σοφ-ι-αν φερ-ει.

Exercise 2.14

Translate into Greek:

- 1 Time brings victory.
- 2 We go to the market-place.
- 3 The house has gates.
- 4 Life teaches wisdom.
- 5 The goddess has honour.



EXPRESSING TIME (1)

Time how long is expressed by the accusative, as in Latin (e.g. for ten hours, for five days: no word for is needed).

Exercise 2.15

Translate into English:

- 1 οἱ ἀνθρώπ-οι τας πυλ-ας πεντε ὥρ-ας φυλασσ-ουσιν.
- 2 οἱ φίλ-οι ἐπιστολ-ας γραφ-ουσιν.
- 3 ὁ πολέμ-ος τὸν τε κινδυν-ὸν καὶ τὸν θανάτ-ὸν φερ-ει.
- 4 ὁ στρατ-ος δεκα ἡμερας μενει.
- 5 πρὸς τὴν τε κωμ-ὴν καὶ τὴν ἀγορ-αν τρεχ-ομεν.

πεντε	five
δεκα	ten

SECOND DECLENSION NEUTER NOUNS

δῶρον gift

sg	nom	δῶρ-ον
	acc	δῶρ-ον

pl	nom	δῶρ-α
	acc	δῶρ-α

- Notice that, as in Latin, nominative and accusative are always the same with neuter nouns; both nominative and accusative singular of the neuter are like the masculine accusative (compare *bellum, bellum* with *dominus, dominum*); nominative and accusative plural end -α (Latin -a).
- To find out whether a neuter noun is nominative or accusative, you must look at the rest of the sentence (e.g. is another word nominative, making it likely the neuter one is accusative? or vice versa; and does the person ending of the verb give a clue?).
- Neuter plurals in Greek normally take a singular verb. (There is no obvious reason for this: a neuter plural was perhaps felt to be a kind of collective singular.)

Neuter of the definite article:

sg	nom	το
	acc	το
pl	nom	τα
	acc	τα

Note that there is no -v ending on the singular. As with nouns, nominative and accusative are the same. The τ- stem (which the article in the masculine and feminine uses for the accusative) here is used for both nominative and accusative.

Ten nouns like δωρον:

1	ἄθλον	prize
2	δειπνον	dinner, meal
3	δενδρον	tree
4	δεσμωτηριον	prison
5	εργον	work, deed
6	ιερον	temple
7	ναυτικον	fleet
8	όπλα (<i>plural</i>)	arms, weapons
9	πλοιον	boat
10	στρατοπεδον	camp

Exercise 2.16

Translate into English:

- 1 ό δουλ-ος προς το δεσμωτηρι-ον τρεχ-ει.
- 2 οι ξεν-οι όπλ-α έχ-ουσιν.
- 3 τα δενδρ-α την οικι-αν φυλασσ-ει.
- 4 τα πλοι-α τον στρατ-ον ~~φερ-ει~~.
- 5 η κορ-η δωρ-α και άθλ-α έχ-ει.
- 6 ό στρατηγ-ος τα όπλ-α προς το στρατοπεδ-ον πεμπ-ει.
- 7 ό άγγελ-ος το έργ-ον διδασκ-ει.
- 8 οί συμμαχ-οι εις το στρατοπεδ-ον τρεχ-ουσιν.
- 9 ό τε θε-ος και η θε-α ιερ-α έχ-ουσιν.
- 10 το ναυτικ-ον εις την ναυμαχι-αν βαιν-ει.

Exercise 2.17

Translate into Greek:

- 1 I have the prize.
- 2 The boats guard the river.
- 3 You (sg) carry the gifts.
- 4 The girls run to the temple.
- 5 The camp has gates.

Exercise 2.18

Give one English derivative from:

- 1 βιος
- 2 ἄθλον
- 3 φιλος
- 4 ναυτικον
- 5 φοβος

REVISION CHECKPOINT

Make sure you know:

- present tense of the verb *to be*
- common connecting words
- the nominative and accusative (sg and pl) of χωρα
- use of the accusative for *time how long*
- the nominative and accusative (sg and pl) of δωρον
- the neuter forms of the definite article

SUMMARY OF CHAPTER TWO GRAMMAR

Nouns (first and second declension): nominative and accusative plural

First declension nouns like τιμή (*honour*) have nom and acc pl endings -αι, -ας.

Second declension nouns like λόγος (*word*) have nom and acc pl endings -οι, -ους.

Corresponding parts of the article are m nom and acc pl οἱ, τους, f nom and acc pl αἱ, τας.

The verb to be: present tense

This common verb (irregular in Greek as in other languages) has the forms εἰμι, εἶ, ἐστί(ν), ἐσμεν, ἐστε, εἰσι(ν). It is followed by a complement (another nominative agreeing with the subject), not an accusative object.

Connecting words

Common examples are καί (*and*) and ἀλλά (*but*). Note also τε . . . καί (*both . . . and*), where τε comes after the first (or only) word referring to the first of the two items being joined.

First declension feminine nouns: variant pattern

If the stem ends in iota or rho, e.g. χώρα (*country*) the singular endings normally have alpha (nom -α, acc -αν) instead of the usual eta (-η, -ην).

Translation of the definite article

The article usually corresponds to English *the*, but Greek uses it a bit more widely, with the result that sometimes it should not be translated: for abstract qualities (as noted in Chapter One) and general categories, e.g. οἱ δούλοι (*slaves* as a class).

Expressing time (1)

Time how long is expressed by the accusative, e.g. πέντε ώρας (*for five hours*).

Second declension neuter nouns

Second declension nouns that are neuter, e.g. δῶρον (*gift*) have the singular ending -ον and the plural ending -α in both the nominative and the accusative.

CHAPTER TWO VOCABULARY

ἀγορά	ή	agora, market-place, public square
ἄθλον	το	prize
ἄλλα		but
ἄνθρωπος	ό	man, human being
ἀποκτείνω		I kill
βίος	ό	life
δειπνόν	το	dinner, meal
δέκα		ten
δένδρον	το	tree
δεσμωτήριον	το	prison
δημός	ό	people, community
δῶρον	το	gift
εἰμι		I am
ἐκκλησία	ή	assembly
ἔργον	το	work, deed
ἔσπερα	ή	evening
εὕρισκω		I find
ἡμέρα	ή	day
θάνατος	ό	death
θεά	ή	goddess
θύρα	ή	door
ἱερόν	το	temple
καί		and
κίνδυνος	ό	danger
λαμβάνω		I take
λείπω		I leave
λύω		I release, I untie
μανθάνω		I learn
μένω		I stay, I remain
ναυμαχία	ή	sea-battle
ναυτικόν	το	fleet
νόμος	ό	law, custom
οἰκία	ή	house
όπλα	τα	arms, weapons
πέμπω		I send
πέντε		five
πλοῖον	το	boat
πόλεμος	ό	war
σοφία	ή	wisdom
στρατοπέδον	το	camp
τάσσω		I draw up, I arrange
τε* . . . καί		both . . . and
φεύγω		I flee, I run away

φίλος	ὁ	friend
φοβος	ὁ	fear
χρονος	ὁ	time
χωρα	η	land, country
ωρα	η	hour

48 words

* τε comes after the first (or only) word referring to the first of the two items being joined

Chapter Three

NOUNS (FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION): ALL CASES

The nouns you have learned so far with genitive and dative added:

		<i>first declension</i>		<i>second declension</i>	
		<i>feminine</i>		<i>masculine</i>	<i>neuter</i>
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	τιμή	χώρα	λογ-ος*	δωρ-ον
	<i>acc</i>	τιμή-ην	χώρα-αν	λογ-ον	δωρ-ον
	<i>gen</i>	τιμή-ης	χώρα-ας	λογ-ου	δωρ-ου
	<i>dat</i>	τιμή-ῃ	χώρα-α	λογ-ῳ (* νοσ λογ-ε)	δωρ-ῳ
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	τιμ-αι	χωρ-αι	λογ-οι	δωρ-α
	<i>acc</i>	τιμ-ας	χωρ-ας	λογ-ους	δωρ-α
	<i>gen</i>	τιμ-ων	χωρ-ων	λογ-ων	δωρ-ων
	<i>dat</i>	τιμ-αις	χωρ-αις	λογ-οις	δωρ-οις

The definite article with genitive and dative added:

(note that the conventional order here is masculine – feminine – neuter, whereas the nouns are given in declension order)

		<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	ὁ	ἡ	το
	<i>acc</i>	τον	τιν	το
	<i>gen</i>	του	της	του
	<i>dat</i>	τω	τῇ	τῷ
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	οι	αἱ	τα
	<i>acc</i>	τους	τας	τα
	<i>gen</i>	των	των	των
	<i>dat</i>	τοις	ταις	τοις

- Notice that τιμή and χώρα have the same pattern in the singular, but with different vowels; and are identical in the plural.
- Notice that the dative singulars have iota subscript.

- Notice again broad similarities to Latin, particularly of the datives (*puellae*, *domino*, *bello*; *puellis*, *dominis*, *bellis*).
- Notice that *all* Greek genitive plurals end -ων (Latin has -um, but often as part of a longer ending: -arum, -orum, -ium, etc).
- There is no ablative case. (The jobs the ablative does in Latin are divided up between the genitive and dative.)
- There is a vocative case (used to address someone or something). For second declension nouns like *λόγος* in the singular it ends -ε (compare Latin *domine*). For most other singulars (exceptions will be noted later) and for all plurals it is the same as the nominative.
- The genitive is the case of possession and definition, often translated *of*: e.g. *the house of the general* = *the general's house*. It is also has the idea of *separation* (going away from), and is used with prepositions indicating this (which in Latin would take the ablative).
- The dative is the case of the indirect object, often translated *to* or *for*:

e.g. I give the money (*direct object*) to the slave (*indirect*).

It is used with prepositions indicating rest *in* or *at* a place (which in Latin would also take the ablative: notice that although Greek has fewer cases available, it often makes more distinctions).

PREPOSITIONS

- You have already met two prepositions with the accusative, indicating *motion towards*:

εἰς	into
πρὸς	towards

- The following take the genitive, indicating *motion away from*:

ἀπὸ	(away) from
ἐκ	out of

(ἐξ if the next word starts with a vowel)

Notice that εἰς and ἐκ are more specific than πρὸς and ἀπὸ (which just indicate general direction).

- The following takes the dative, indicating *rest*:

ἐν	in
----	----

Exercise 3.1

Change these article + noun combinations into the genitive:

- 1 ο ανθρωπ-ος
- 2 η σοφι-α
- 3 το δενδρ-ον
- 4 οί συμμαχ-οι
- 5 αί κορ-αι

Exercise 3.2

Change these article + noun combinations into the dative:

- 1 ο ξεν-ος
- 2 το εργ-ον
- 3 τα οπλ-α
- 4 αί ημερ-αι
- 5 οί φιλ-οι

Exercise 3.3

Translate into English:

- 1 ό δουλ-ος άπο της οικι-ας προς την άγορ-αν τρεχ-ει.
- 2 έστι* δουλ-ος έν τω δεσμωτηρι-ω.
- 3 ό στρατ-ος εις κινδυν-ον βαιν-ει.
- 4 οί ξεν-οι έκ του δεσμωτηρι-ου τρεχ-ουσιν.
- 5 είσι* νομοι έν τω πολεμ-ω.
- 6 τους ίππ-ους έκ του κινδυν-ου λυ-ομεν.
- 7 ό στρατ-ος έκ του στρατοπεδ-ου βαιν-ει.
- 8 την κορ-ην προς την άγορ-αν πεμπ-ω.
- 9 τα άθλ-α έκ της οικι-ας εις το ιερ-ον φερ-εις.
- 10 το ιερ-ον έστιν έν τη κωμ-η.

* note that, as in Latin, if the verb *to be* comes at the beginning of the sentence, it is usually translated *there is, there are*, etc

SANDWICH CONSTRUCTION

This is one of the most important and distinctive features of Greek grammar. A description, specifying which person or thing, is sandwiched inside the article-noun combination. The description is often a genitive phrase (with its own article):

e.g. <i>literally</i>	ἡ του στρατηγ-ου οικι-α the of-the-general house	<i>i.e.</i> the general's house
--------------------------	---	---------------------------------

<i>literally</i>	το των συμμαχ-ων ναυτικ-ον the of-the-allies fleet	<i>i.e.</i> the allies' fleet
------------------	---	-------------------------------

A 'genitive sandwich' can often be recognised by two forms of the definite article next to each other. It is important to get the sandwich the right way round: the outer part is the main thing being talked about (and can be in any case, depending on its job in the sentence); the inner part is telling you *which one* or *whose* (and is in the genitive). When translating into Greek it is helpful to do the outer part of the sandwich first, coming back to fill in the gap.

Exercise 3.4

Translate into English:

- 1 ὁ του στρατηγ-ου ἵππ-ος φευγ-ει.
- 2 τους του διδασκαλ-ου λογ-ους μανθαν-ετε.
- 3 οἱ των θε-ων νομ-οι τους ἀνθρωπ-ους διδασκ-ουσιν.
- 4 ἀκου-ομεν τους του ἀγγελ-ου λογ-ους.
- 5 προς το της θε-ας ιερ-ον βαιν-ομεν.

Exercise 3.5

Translate into Greek:

- 1 The teacher's slave runs away.
- 2 I hear the voice of the goddess.
- 3 You (sg) learn the words of the messenger.
- 4 The boats of the fleet guard the village.
- 5 We release the gates of the camp.

SAC

REVISION CHECKPOINT

Make sure you know:

- the present tense of παύω (six bits)
- the present tense of εἰμι (six bits)
- the declensions of τιμή, χώρα, λόγος and δῶρον in the nominative, accusative, genitive and dative, singular and plural (eight bits of each, plus vocative for λόγος)
- how the sandwich construction works
- the definite article in all three genders and four cases, singular and plural (twenty-four bits)

To help you, here again is the whole of the definite article (it is better to learn the columns downwards rather than across):

		<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	ὁ	ἡ	το
	<i>acc</i>	τον	την	το
	<i>gen</i>	του	της	του
	<i>dat</i>	τω	τη	τω
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	οἱ	αἱ	τα
	<i>acc</i>	τους	τας	τα
	<i>gen</i>	των	των	των
	<i>dat</i>	τοις	ταις	τοις

- Notice that the article starts with a rough breathing instead of tau in the masculine and feminine nominative, singular and plural.
- Notice that the endings are very similar to those of the nouns τιμή, λόγος and δῶρον, except that there is no -ς on the masculine nominative singular, and no -ν on the neuter nominative and accusative singular.

Exercise 3.6 (Revision)

Translate into English:

- 1 τα δωρ-α ἐν τη οικι-α εστιν.
- 2 αἱ κορ-αι το ἐργ-ον μανθαν-ουσιν.
- 3 το των συμμαχ-ων ναυτικ-ον νικ-ην ἐχ-ει.
- 4 ὁ στρατηγ-ος τα οπλ-α φερ-ει.
- 5 ὁ στρατ-ος ἐν τω στρατοπεδ-ῳ εστιν.
- 6 ὁ ἀγγελ-ος το δωρ-ον πεμπ-ει.
- 7 οἱ συμμαχ-οι προς το στρατοπεδ-ον τρεχ-ουσιν.
- 8 οἱ φιλ-οι τα ἀθλ-α λαμβαν-ουσιν.
- 9 οἱ τε θε-οι και αἱ θε-αι δωρ-α ἐχ-ουσιν.
- 10 ἡ του ναυτικ-ου νικ-η φυλασσ-ει την χωρ-αν.

IMPERATIVE

The imperative, used for giving an order, is:

<i>sg</i>	παυ-ε	stop!
<i>pl</i>	παυ-ετε	

Notice that the plural is the same as the ordinary second person plural. Imperatives however are easy to recognise. They are very often accompanied by a noun in the vocative, preceded by ὦ (O. . .), though this is usually better left out in English.

Exercise 3.7

Translate into English:

- 1 φευγ-ε, ὦ δουλ-ε.
- 2 διωκ-ετε τον δουλ-ον, ὦ φιλ-οι.
- 3 ὦ συμμαχ-οι, ευρισκ-ετε τα οπλ-α.
- 4 διδασκ-ε, ὦ διδασκαλ-ε.
- 5 φερ-ετε τα αθλ-α, ὦ στρατηγ-οι.

Exercise 3.8



Translate into Greek:

- 1 Release the horses, friends!
- 2 Write a letter, slave!
- 3 Stay, allies!
- 4 Draw up the army, general!
- 5 Teacher, listen to the words!

Nine more verbs:

1	αποθνήσκω	I die
2	γίγνωσκω	I get to know, I realise, I understand
3	ἐθέλω	I wish, I am willing
4	θαυμάζω	I am amazed (at), I admire
5	κελεύω	I order
6	παράχω	I produce, I provide
7	πειθω	I persuade
8	πιπτω	I fall
9	πιστεύω	I trust, I believe (+ <i>dative</i>)

ADVERBS (1)

The following adverbs of time and place are common:

νυν	now
πολλακίς	often
αει	always
ἐνθαδε	here
ἐκει	there

Adverbs do not change their ending. They typically come just before the verb.

CASES TAKEN BY VERBS

Most Greek verbs that are followed naturally by a noun have it in the accusative, as direct object. A few however are followed by other cases. As noted above, πιστευω is followed by the dative, because the underlying idea is of *giving trust to* another person. Of verbs you have met already, ακουω takes an accusative direct object for a *thing* (e.g. βοην ακουω = *I hear a shout*) but a *genitive* for a person (e.g. του δουλου ακουω = *I hear the slave*). Different again is διδασκω, which can take a double accusative (e.g. τον δουλον τους λογους διδασκομεν = *we teach the slave the words*).

Exercise 3.9

Translate into English:

- 1 οι του αγγελου λογ-οι νυν πειθ-ουσι τον δημ-ον.
- 2 ο του στρατηγ-ου ιππ-ος εκει εστιν.
- 3 ο ξεν-ος του στρατηγ-ου ακου-ει.
- 4 οι συμμαχ-οι εν ταις ναυμαχι-αις πολλακις αποθνησκ-ουσιν.
- 5 οι δουλ-οι τον ιππ-ον προς τον ποταμ-ον αγουσιν.
- 6 η θε-α τους ανθρωπ-ους την σοφίαν διδασκ-ει.
- 7 τους λογ-ους αιει μανθαν-ετε, ω φιλ-οι.
- 8 ο διδασκαλ-ος τη επιστολ-η ου πιστευ-ει.
- 9 γινωσκ-ω τας των συμμαχ-ων φων-ας.
- 10 ο ξεν-ος βουλ-ην τη ναυμαχι-α παρεχ-ει.

INFINITIVE

The present infinitive (*to do something*) is formed by adding -ειν to the verb stem:

παυ-ειν

to stop

Exercise 3.10

Translate into English:

- 1 φερ-ειν
- 2 πιστευ-ειν
- 3 μεν-ειν
- 4 παρεχ-ειν
- 5 διωκ-ειν

Exercise 3.11

Translate into Greek:

- 1 To order.
- 2 To get to know.
- 3 To persuade.
- 4 To die.
- 5 To provide.

Exercise 3.12

Translate into English:

- 1 οἱ ἀγγέλ-οι πειθ-ουσι τὸν στρατ-ὸν φευγ-εῖν.
- 2 ὁ στρατηγ-ὸς κελευ-ει τοὺς δουλ-οὺς τρεχ-εῖν.
- 3 ὁ στρατ-ὸς οὐκ ἔθελ-ει ἐν κινδυν-ῷ μεν-εῖν.
- 4 πειθ-ε τοὺς συμμαχ-οὺς τῷ ἀγγέλ-ῳ πιστευ-εῖν, ὡ στρατηγ-ε.
- 5 ἔθελ-ομεν τοὺς νομ-οὺς ἀεὶ φυλασσ-εῖν.

ADJECTIVES

The commonest type of adjective is easy if you have learned the nouns:

σοφός wise, clever

		<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	σοφ-ός	σοφ-ή	σοφ-όν
	<i>acc</i>	σοφ-όν	σοφ-ήν	σοφ-όν
	<i>gen</i>	σοφ-ου	σοφ-ης	σοφ-ου
	<i>dat</i>	σοφ-ῷ	σοφ-ῇ	σοφ-ῷ
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	σοφ-οι	σοφ-αι	σοφ-α
	<i>acc</i>	σοφ-ους	σοφ-ας	σοφ-α
	<i>gen</i>	σοφ-ων	σοφ-ων	σοφ-ων
	<i>dat</i>	σοφ-οις	σοφ-αῖς	σοφ-οις

- This is exactly the same as λογός, τιμή and δῶρον. As with the definite article, the conventional order is masculine – feminine – neuter (rather than first declension then second declension).

- As with the nouns, there is a variant form of the feminine singular if the stem ends with a vowel or rho:

μικρος small

sg	nom	μικρ-α
	acc	μικρ-αν
	gen	μικρ-ας
	dat	μικρ-α

This is exactly the same as the singular of χωρα.

- As in Latin, adjectives agree with the nouns they refer to in number, gender and case.
- Adjectives commonly use the sandwich construction:

e.g. ό σοφ-ος δουλ-ος
 the wise slave

Another way of achieving the same effect is to repeat the article*:

e.g. ό δουλ-ος ό σοφ-ος
literally the slave the wise (one), i.e.
 the wise slave

Both these expressions *specify which slave* – the wise one rather than (say) the stupid one. The position of an adjective used in either of these two ways is often called *bound* (fastened to the noun) or *attributive* (telling you an *attribute* or quality).

* The genitive sandwich can also do this:

literally ή οικ-ια ή του στρατηγ-ου
 the house the (one) of the general, i.e.
 the general's house

- If on the other hand you want to tell us for the first time that the slave is wise, you say:

ό δουλ-ος σοφ-ος έστιν
The slave is wise

(or just: ό δουλ-ος σοφ-ος, with έστιν understood): this is called the *predicative* position, because it *predicates* or tells you something new

Five adjectives like σοφος:

1	άγαθος	good
2	δεινος	strange, terrible
3	κακος	bad
4	καλος	fine, beautiful
5	χαλεπος	difficult, dangerous

Five adjectives like μικρός:

1	Αθηναίος	Athenian
2	ἀνδρείος	brave
3	ελευθερός	free
4	ἐχθρός	hostile
5	νέος*	new

* a stem ending in epsilon (as we saw with noun stems in iota or rho) also has feminine -α

Exercise 3.13

Translate into English:

- 1 το των συμμαχ-ων ἐργ-ον χαλεπ-ον ἐστιν.
- 2 ὁ ἀγγελ-ος τους ξεν-ους νε-ους λογ-ους διδασκ-ει.
- 3 ἡ νικ-η ἐστι καλ-η.
- 4 ὁ νε-ος ἵππ-ος μικρ-ος ἐστιν.
- 5 ὁ ποταμ-ος οὐ χαλεπ-ος ἐστιν.
- 6 ἡ βουλ-η κακ-η.
- 7 ἡ χωρ-α ελευθερ-α μεν-ει.
- 8 οἱ ξεν-οι ἐχθρ-οι εἰσιν.
- 9 ὁ θε-ος καλ-α δωρ-α ἐχ-ει.
- 10 ὁ πολεμ-ος δειν-ος ἐστιν.

Exercise 3.14

Translate into Greek:

- 1 The god is wise.
- 2 The words are strange.
- 3 The bad slave runs away.
- 4 The new camp is good.
- 5 The allies are brave.



ADVERBS (2)

Most ordinary adjectives can be changed into adverbs (usually used to describe *how* an action is done) simply by changing the -ων of the genitive plural to -ως: e.g. σοφ-ων becomes σοφ-ως (= *wisely*). As we saw with adverbs of time, the adverb itself does not change its ending.

Exercise 3.15

Translate into English:

- 1 ὁ στρατ-ος την χωρ-αν ἀνδρει-ως φυλασσ-ει.
- 2 ὁ ἀγγελ-ος καλ-ως λεγ-ει.
- 3 ὁ διδασκαλ-ος σοφ-ος ἐστι και σοφ-ως διδασκ-ει.
- 4 ὁ δουλ-ος τους ἱππ-ους χαλεπ-ως ἀγ-ει.
- 5 ὁ θε-ος τα δωρ-α ἐλευθερ-ως παρεχ-ει.

PARTICLES

Words connecting sentences are called *particles*. Many of them come second word in the new sentence, but are translated at the beginning (compare e.g. *enim, tamen, igitur* in Latin).

Very common are:

γαρ	for
δε	but <i>or</i> and
μεντοι	however
οὖν	therefore

Also very important are the paired

μεν . . . δε

These link two clauses (or single words), drawing a contrast between them: they can sometimes be translated on the *one hand* . . . *on the other*, but often this sounds clumsy, and it is better to leave μεν untranslated and for δε to put e.g. *but* or *whilst*.

Exercise 3.16

How the Locrians make laws (1)

Words underlined are given below in basic form in the order they occur.

- οἱ Λοκο-οι τοὺς παλαι-ους νομ-ους ἐτι ἔχ-ουσιν. τοὺς γὰρ τῶν προγον-ων νομ-ους αἰε φυλάσσ-ουσιν. εἰ τις ἔθελ-ει νομ-ον νε-ον παρεχ-ειν, τὸν τραχηλ-ον ἐν βροχ-ω ἔχ-ει. ἐπειτα δὲ περι τοῦ νομ-ου λεγ-ει. εἰ μὲν σοφ-ως λεγ-ει, καὶ ὁ νομ-ος χρησιμ-ος ἐστὶ, καὶ ἡ τῶν Λοκρ-ων ἐκκλησι-α
- 5 ἔθελ-ει ἔχ-ειν τὸν νομ-ον τὸν νε-ον, ὁ ἀνθρωπ-ος ἐπαιν-ον ἔχ-ει καὶ ἀποβαίν-ει. εἰ δὲ ὁ νομ-ος κακ-ος τε καὶ χαλεπ-ος ἐστίν, οἱ Λοκρ-οι τὸν βροχ-ον έλκ-ουσι καὶ τὸν ἀνθρωπ-ον ἀποκτείν-ουσιν. ὁ οὖν φοβ-ος κωλυ-ει τοὺς Λοκρ-ους. ὁ γὰρ τοῦ θανατ-ου κινδυν-ος δειν-ος ἐστίν. οὐ πολλakis περὶ νομ-ων νε-ων ἀκού-ουσιν. ἐν διακοσι-οις ενιαυτ-οις
- 10 εἰς νομ-ος νε-ος ἐστίν.

	Λοκρος	Locrian (person from Locris, in central Greece)
	παλαιος	ancient
	ἐτι	still
	προγονος	ancestor
2	εἰ	if
	τις	someone
	τραχηλος	neck
	βροχος	noose
	ἐπειτα	then
3	περι	(+ gen) about
	χρησιμος	useful
	ἐπαινος	praise
	αποβαίνω	I go away
	έλκω	I pull on
8	κωλυω	I hinder
	διακοσιοι	200
	ενιαυτος	year
	εἰς	one (note rough breathing; do not confuse with εἰς = into)

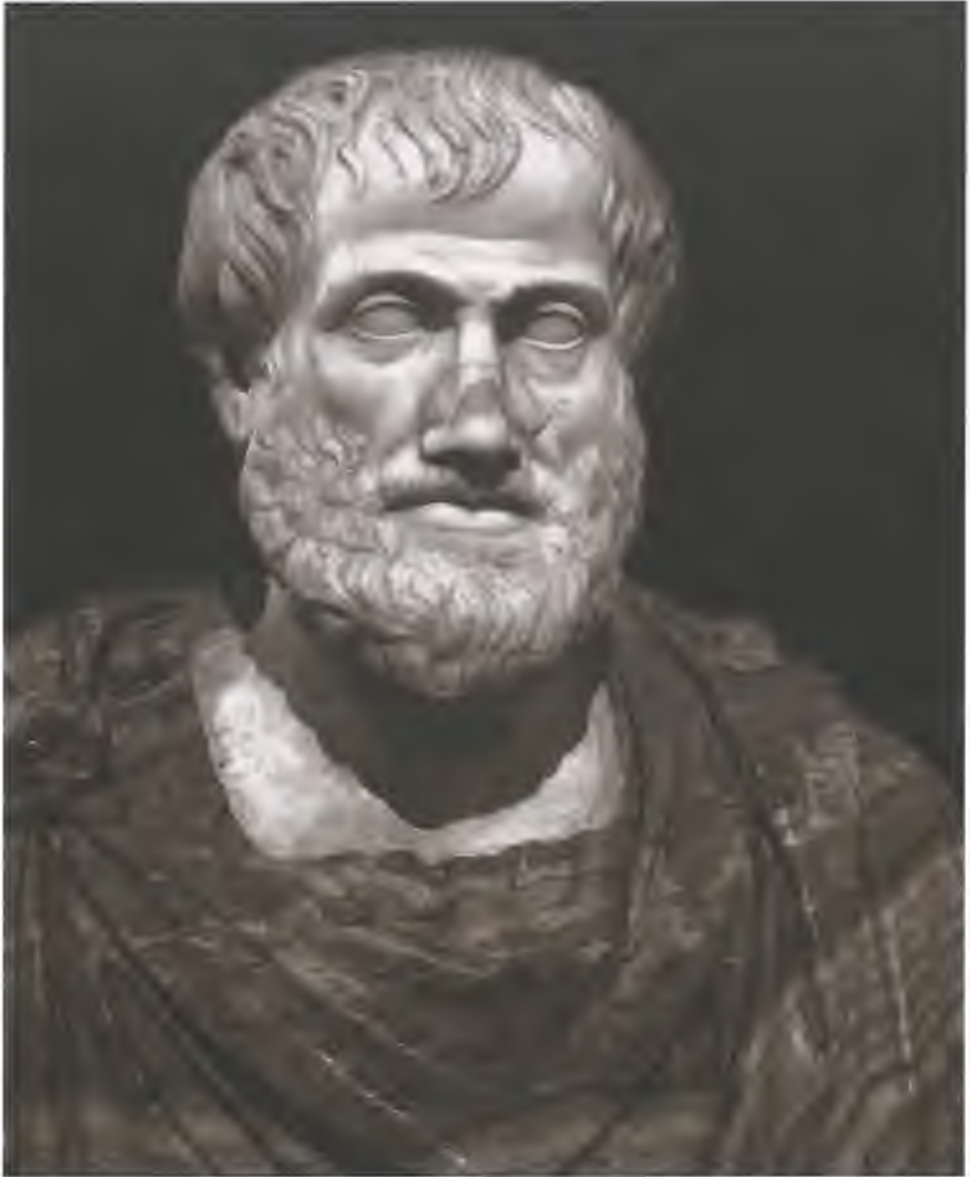


Figure 3.1 *Roman copy of an original Greek bust of Demosthenes.* (Photo by Werner Forman Archive/Heritage Images/Getty Images.)

Background: The Rule of Law

The story about the Locrians is told in the course of a speech by the great orator (public speaker and politician) Demosthenes (384-322 BC). Each city-state in Greece had its own laws and customs, and the Greeks looked with interested curiosity at the laws of their neighbours. The conservatism of Locrian institutions stands in remarkable contrast to Demosthenes' own city of Athens, which (at an opposite extreme) changed its laws with excessive ease and frequency. But the Greeks were generally united in their belief in the centrality of the legal system in the running of a city: myths told of a pre-legal society dominated by family vendetta (if someone killed your brother, you went and killed one of his relatives), and of the transition from this to a more ordered system where you could take him to court.

Exercise 3.17

How the Locrians make laws (2)

- οἱ Λοκροὶ, εἰ τις ὀφθαλμὸν ἐκκοπτ-ει, ἀναγκαζ-ουσι τὸν ἀνθρώπ-ον
 ὀφθαλμ-ὸν παρεχ-ειν ἀντεκκοπτ-ειν. Λοκρὸς τις μόνον ὀφθαλμ-ὸν ἔχ-ει,
 ἐχθρ-ὸς τις τὸν ὀφθαλμ-ὸν ἐκκοπτ-ει. οὕτως ὁ ἀνθρώπ-ος ὀφθαλμ-ὸν οὐκ
 5 ἔχ-ει. νομ-ὸν οὖν νε-ὸν ἐθελ-ει παρεχ-ειν. φοβ-ὸν γὰρ οὐκ ἔχ-ει, διότι ὁ
 βί-ος ἐστὶ νῦν ἀβιωτ-ος. τὸν οὖν τραχηλ-ὸν ἐν τῷ βοοχ-ῶ ἔχ-ει, καὶ περὶ
 τοῦ νομ-οῦ λεγ-ει.

	εἰ	if
	τις	some one, (<i>as adjective</i>) a certain
	ὀφθαλμος	eye
	ἐκκοπτω	I knock out
1	ἀναγκαζω	I force
	ἀντεκκοπτω	I knock out in return
	μονος	single
	ἐχθρος	(<i>as noun</i>) enemy
	οὕτως	in this way
4	διότι	because
	ἀβιωτος	not worth living
	τραχηλος	neck
	βοοχος	noose

Read the rest of the passage and answer the questions that follow:

- 7 “εἰ τις τὸν ἑτεροφθαλμὸν ὀφθαλμὸν ἐκκοπτ-ει, δεῖ παρεχ-εῖν ἀμφοτερο-ους τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς ἀντεκκοπτ-εῖν. ἀμφοτερο-οὶ οὖν οἱ ἀνθρώποι ὁμοίως πασχ-ουσιν.” ὁ ἀνθρώπος σοφ-ῶς λεγ-ει, καὶ ὁ νομ-ος
- 10 χρησιμ-ος ἐστίν. ἢ τῶν Λοκρ-ῶν ἐκκλησι-α ἐθελ-ει ἔχ-εῖν τὸν νομ-ὸν τὸν νε-ον. ὁ μὲν οὖν τοῦ ἑτεροφθαλμοῦ ἐχθρ-ος ἀμφοτερο-ους τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς παρεχ-ει ἀντεκκοπτ-εῖν. ὁ δὲ ἑτεροφθαλμ-ος ἐπαιν-ον ἔχ-ει καὶ ἀποβαίν-ει, καὶ οἱ Λοκρ-οὶ νε-ον νομ-ὸν νυν ἔχ-ουσιν.

	ἑτεροφθαλμος	one-eyed man
	δεῖ	it is necessary (<i>impersonal verb</i> , + <i>infinitive</i>)
	ἀμφοτεροὶ	both
	ὁμοίως	in the same way
9	πασχῶ	I suffer
	χρησιμος	useful
	ἐπαινος	praise
	ἀποβαίνω	I go away

- 1 What does the proposed new law say should happen if anyone knocks out the eye of a one-eyed man (lines 7–8)? (3)
- 2 What is the justification for this (lines 8–9)? (3)
- 3 What is the assembly’s verdict on the proposed new law, and why (lines 9–11)? (4)
- 4 What happens to the enemy of the one-eyed man (lines 11–12)? (3)
- 5 What happens to the proposer of the new law (line 12)? (2)

15 marks

FUTURE TENSE

For most verbs this is very easy. Add sigma to the stem, before adding the same endings as the present tense has:

sg	1	παυ-σ-ω	I shall stop
	2	παυ-σ-εις	you (sg) will stop
	3	παυ-σ-ει	he/she/it will stop
pl	1	παυ-σ-ομεν	we shall stop
	2	παυ-σ-ετε	you (pl) will stop
	3	παυ-σ-ουσι(ν)*	they will stop

* again the movable nu is added if the next word starts with a vowel, or if this is the last word in the sentence

With some verbs where the stem ends in a consonant, adding the sigma requires some adjustment or alternative spelling.

- Because pi and sigma make psi, the future of πεμπω is πεμψω. And because phi and sigma sounds almost the same as pi and sigma, the future of γραφω is γραψω.
- Because kappa and sigma make xi, the future of διωκω is διωξω. Because gamma and sigma sounds almost the same as kappa and sigma, the future of άγω is άξω. Because sigma, kappa and sigma is awkward to pronounce, the future of διδασκω is διδαξω (the first sigma drops out). And because theta and sigma is awkward to pronounce, the future of πειθω is πεισω (the theta just drops out).
- Some verbs form their future in a different way: this will be explained later.

From this point onwards hyphens will no longer be inserted between stem and ending in exercises, but will continue to be used for new grammar.

Exercise 3.18

Translate into English:

- 1 παυσομεν
- 2 λυσετε
- 3 λειψω
- 4 πεισουσι(ν)
- 5 διωξει
- 6 πεμψεις
- 7 άξω
- 8 διδαξομεν
- 9 παυσεις
- 10 λυσει

Exercise 3.19

Translate into English:

- 1 ὁ ἀνδρεῖος ξενος λυσει τον ἵππον.
- 2 ἡ ἔσπερα οὐ παυσει την εκκλησιαν.
- 3 ὁ στρατηγος διωξει τους κακους δουλους.
- 4 ὁ διδασκαλος πεμψει την επιστολην.
- 5 οἱ συμμαχοι ἀει πεισουσι τον δημον.
- 6 τῷ του στρατηγου ἵππῳ οὐ πιστευσω.
- 7 ὁ ἀγγελος τους του θεου λογους καλως λεξει.
- 8 τον στρατον προς τον ποταμον ἀξω.
- 9 λειψομεν το στρατοπεδον.
- 10 λυσεις την μικραν πυλην.

Exercise 3.20

Translate into Greek:

- 1 He will release.
- 2 We shall stop.
- 3 You (*pl*) will lead.
- 4 They will write.
- 5 You (*sg*) will chase.

REVISION CHECKPOINT

Make sure you know:

- how the imperative and infinitive are formed
- adjective declensions (σοφος and μικρος)
- how the 'bound' or 'attributive' position works (sandwich construction or repeated article)
- how adverbs are formed from adjectives
- what particles are
- how the future tense is formed (with adjustment to consonant stems in adding sigma)

IMPERFECT TENSE

As well as a set of endings, this has a marker on the beginning of each bit to indicate that it is a past tense. This is epsilon with a smooth breathing (ε-) and is called the *augment*.

<i>εΙ</i>	1	ἐ-παυ-ον	I was stopping
	2	ἐ-παυ-ες	you (sg) were stopping
	3	ἐ-παυ-ε(ν)*	he/she/it was stopping
<i>pl</i>	1	ἐ-παυ-ομεν	we were stopping
	2	ἐ-παυ-ετε	you (pl) were stopping
	3	ἐ-παυ-ον	they were stopping

* again the movable nu is added (to make pronunciation easier) if the next word starts with a vowel, or if this is the last word in the sentence

- The imperfect (literally *unfinished*) tense strictly refers to an action that is not completed. It has a similar range of meanings to the Latin imperfect: *was doing, used to do, did (over a long period)*.
- Notice that the first person singular and third person plural are identical. The context in a sentence should enable you to tell which it is.
- Notice some similarities to the set of endings you have already seen used for the present and future tenses: not only the identical ones for first and second persons plural (where only the augment indicates the imperfect), but also the final sigma for second person singular.
- In order to look up in dictionary or wordlist a verb in the imperfect, you must remove the augment to see the original stem.

Exercise 3.21

Translate into Greek:

- 1 I was releasing.
- 2 We were chasing.
- 3 You (pl) were running away.
- 4 They were leaving.
- 5 You (sg) were sending.

Exercise 3.22

Translate into English:

- 1 ὁ δουλος ἔλυε τον καλον ἵππον.
- 2 ὁ ἀγγελος νεους λογους σοφως ἔλεγεν.
- 3 τας ἐπιστολας ἐπέμπες.
- 4 ἡ κορη ἔφερε τα ἀθλα.
- 5 ὁ ξενος ἐπειθε τον δημον.
- 6 οἱ συμμαχοι το στρατοπεδον ἀνδρειως ἐφυλασσον.
- 7 το ἔργον ἐμανθανετε.
- 8 ὁ του στρατηγου δουλος ἐφευγεν.
- 9 οἱ ἵπποι προς τον ποταμον ἐτρεχον.
- 10 ἐφυλασσομεν την της οἰκίας θυραν.

Exercise 3.23

Convert these present tense verbs to imperfect (keeping the same person and number), each time writing the Greek word, then translating it:

- 1 παυω
- 2 πεμπομεν
- 3 διωκουσι(ν)
- 4 φυλασσεις
- 5 μανθανει

IMPERFECT TENSE OF THE VERB *TO BE*

sg	1	ἦ (or ἦν*)	I was
	2	ἦσθα	you (sg) were
	3	ἦν	he/she/it was
pl	1	ἦμεν	we were
	2	ἦτε	you (pl) were
	3	ἦσαν	they were

* ἦν is a common alternative form for the first person singular, but in this book ἦ will normally be used to avoid confusion with the third person

Exercise 3.24*Translate into English:*

- 1 δεκα ώρας ἐκει ἤμεν.
- 2 ὁ κινδυνος δεινος ἦν, ἀλλὰ νυν μικρος ἐστίν.
- 3 οἱ συμμαχοι το στρατοπεδον πεντε ἡμερας ἐφυλασσον.
- 4 οἱ ἄγγελοι αει ανδρειοι ἦσαν.
- 5 σοφος ἦσθα, ὦ φιλε.
- 6 ἐμανθανομεν τους λογους.
- 7 ὁ των συμμαχων ἄγγελος ξενος ἦν.
- 8 σοφοι ἦτε και σοφοι νυν ἐστε, ὦ φιλοι.
- 9 προς την μικραν κωμην πολλακις ἐβαινομεν.
- 10 ὁ του πολεμου κινδυνος δεινος ἦν.

Exercise 3.25*Translate into Greek:*

- 1 We were slaves.
- 2 The general was wise.
- 3 The wise general was speaking for five hours.
- 4 You (sg) were always an ally.
- 5 The words of the messenger were new.

Exercise 3.26 (Revision)*Translate into English:*

- 1 ὁ ἄγγελος εις την εκκλησιαν ἐβαινεν.
- 2 καλα δενδρα ἐν τη κωμη ἦν.
- 3 τα δωρα εις την οἰκιαν πεμπε, ὦ φιλε.
- 4 οἱ ανδρειοι συμμαχοι πολλακις ἐν κινδυνῳ ἦσαν.
- 5 τα πλοια προς τον ποταμον πεμψω.
- 6 αἱ κοραι ἐκ της ἀγορας ἐτρεχον.
- 7 δεκα ἡμερας ἐν τῷ στρατοπεδῷ ἐμενομεν.
- 8 ὁ ξενος δουλος ἦν, ἀλλὰ νυν ελευθερος ἐστίν.
- 9 την του θεου φωνην ἐθαυμαζομεν.
- 10 τους λογους σοφως ἐγινωσκετε.

Exercise 3.27

Give one English derivative from:

- 1 ἀνθρωπος
- 2 σοφία
- 3 δημος
- 4 οἰκία
- 5 στρατηγος
- 6 νεος
- 7 ἱερον
- 8 φωνη
- 9 λογος
- 10 ἐργον

REVISION CHECKPOINT

Make sure you know:

- future tense of παυω (six bits), and how common verbs with consonant stems form the future
- imperfect tense of παυω (six bits)
- imperfect tense of ειμι (six bits)

Exercise 3.28

Translate into Greek:

- 1 The new slave was carrying the gifts into the house.
- 2 The allies were brave but not wise.
- 3 We shall chase the horses towards the river.
- 4 You (sg) were guarding the door of the house.
- 5 The general was drawing up both the fleet and the allies.



PUNCTUATION

The comma and full stop are used as in English.

Greek also has a punctuation mark consisting of one dot above the line (·), marking a pause somewhere between a comma and a full stop, like the English semi-colon or colon.

The Greek question mark looks like the English semi-colon (;).

There is no exclamation mark.

Though not strictly authentic, quotation marks are conventionally used to indicate direct speech.

QUESTIONS

Many sentences can be turned into questions simply by putting a question mark at the end. But an open question (e.g. *Is he stupid?* – to which the answer will be either *yes* or *no*) can be signalled at the start by putting *ἀρα* as first word (where Latin adds *-ne* to the end of the first word).

Questions asking for specific information are introduced by particular question words, many of which begin with *π-* (comparable to Latin *qu-* and English *wh-* : all are historically related). Common examples are:

που; where?

ποτε; when?

πως; how?

Exercise 3.29

Translate into English:

- 1 ἀρα οἱ λόγοι σοφοὶ ἦσαν;
- 2 που ἐστὶν ἡ θύρα;
- 3 ἀρα καλὸς ἦν ὁ ἵππος;
- 4 πως ἐγραφετε τὰς ἐπιστολάς;
- 5 ἀρα φυλάσσετε τὴν κωμὴν;
- 6 πολλακὶς μὲν κακὸς ἦ· νῦν δὲ αἶε ἀγαθὸς εἰμι.
- 7 ἐμάνθανες τοὺς λόγους;
- 8 πως ἐκ τοῦ δεσμωτηρίου ἐπιστολὴν πεμψομεν;
- 9 ποτε ἦν ἡ ναυμαχία;
- 10 ἀρα ἀκουεὶς τὴν τοῦ δούλου βοήν;

Exercise 3.30

SAC

Translate into Greek:

- 1 Where are we?
- 2 How were you (*pl*) learning the words?
- 3 Is the general wise?
- 4 When were you (*pl*) carrying the prizes?
- 5 Were you (*sg*) teaching the slaves?

Exercise 3.31

Athenian Wit

ὁ* Στρατονικός Ἀθηναῖος ἦν καὶ γελῖος. πρὸς τὴν* Μαρωνεῖαν μετὰ
τῶν φίλων ἐβαίνειν.

“ἐν τῇ Μαρωνεῖα προτεροῦν οὐκ ἦ. ἀλλὰ, ὦ φίλοι, καλυπτέτε τοὺς ἐμους
ὀφθαλμούς· καὶ ἄγετε με περὶ τὴν κωμὴν, καὶ λέξω ἀκριβῶς πού ἐσμεν.”

- 5 οἱ οὖν φίλοι τὸν Στρατονικὸν περὶ τὴν κωμὴν ἤγον**· “πού ἐσμεν; ἀρα
γινώσκεις;”

“πρὸ τοῦ καπηλείου.”

“πρὸ τοῦ καπηλείου ἐσμεν. ἀλλὰ πῶς γινώσκεις;”

“διότι οὐδέν ἐν τῇ Μαρωνεῖα ἐστὶν εἰ μὴ καπηλεία.”

* note that proper names (of people and places, starting with a capital letter) normally have the definite article (on the grounds that the name specifies *a particular one*), but this is not translated

** the augment added to a stem starting with alpha usually makes eta

	Στρατονικός	Stratonicus
	Ἀθηναῖος	Athenian
	γελῖος	wit, witty person
	Μαρωνεῖα	Maronea (<i>seaside place in the far north of Greece</i>)
1	μετὰ	(+ <i>genitive</i>) with
	προτερον	previously, before
	καλυπτω	I cover
	ἐμος	my (<i>used with the article, though this is not translated</i>)
	ὀφθαλμός	eye
4	με	me
	περὶ	(+ <i>accusative</i>) around
	ακριβῶς	exactly
	πρὸ	(+ <i>genitive</i>) in front of
	καπηλείον	pub
9	διότι	because
	οὐδέν	nothing
	εἰ μὴ	except

SUMMARY OF CHAPTER THREE GRAMMAR

Nouns: all cases

The genitive case usually indicates possession (*of*) or description. The dative case (*to, for*) is usually used for the indirect object (e.g. giving something *to* someone). Genitive endings are -ης/-ας (*sg*), -ων (*pl*) for first declension and -ου (*sg*), -ων (*pl*) for second (masculine or neuter). Dative endings are -η/α (*sg*), -αις (*pl*) for first declension and -ω (*sg*), -οις (*pl*) for second (masculine or neuter).

Prepositions

ἀπο (*from, away from*) and ἐκ [ἐξ before a vowel] (*out of*) take the genitive and indicate motion away from; ἐν (*in*) takes the dative and indicates rest in a place.

Sandwich construction

A description identifying a person or thing is sandwiched inside a noun-article combination. The description is often a genitive phrase with its own article, e.g. ἡ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ οἰκία (*the general's house*).

Imperative

The endings -ε (*sg*) and -ετε (*pl*) are added to the verb stem to form the imperative, used for giving an order, e.g. παυε, pl παυετε (*'stop!'*). The plural is distinguished only by context from the normal second person plural. An imperative is often used with a vocative noun.

Adverbs (1)

Adverbs of time – e.g. νυν (*now*) – and place – e.g. ἐνθαδε (*here*) – are common, and usually come just before the verb. Adverbs do not change their endings.

Infinitive

The ending -ειν is added to the verb stem to form the infinitive, e.g. παυειν (*to stop*), expressing the basic idea of the verb without a person ending.

Adjectives

The commonest type of adjective – e.g. σοφος -η -ον (*wise*) – has endings like those of λογος, τιμη and δωρον for the three genders. As with first declension nouns, there is a variant feminine if the stem ends in iota or rho – e.g. μικρος -α -ον (*small*).

Adverbs (2)

Most adjectives can be made into adverbs (describing how an action is done) by changing the -ων of the genitive plural to -ως, e.g. σοφως (*wisely*).

Future tense

This is simply formed by adding sigma to the verb stem, then the same endings as the present tense, e.g. παυσω (*I shall stop*). If the stem ends in a consonant, sigma combines as usual to make a double consonant – e.g. δωξω (*I shall pursue*) – or makes further adjustment to ease pronunciation.

Imperfect tense

The imperfect tense (used for an unfinished, repeated or extended action in the past) has the augment ε- on the front of the stem, then the endings -ον, -ες, -ε(ν), -ομεν, -ετε, -ον, e.g. ἔπαυον (*I was stopping*).

Imperfect of the verb *to be*

The imperfect tense of the εἰμι (*I am*) has the forms ἦ (or ἦν), ἦσθα, ἦν, ἦμεν, ἦτε, ἦσαν.

Punctuation

Full stop, comma and (by convention) quotation marks are used as in English. A single dot above the line (·) marks a pause stronger than a comma but less strong than a full stop (like English colon or semi-colon. The Greek question mark looks like the English semi-colon (;).

Questions

Open questions (answer *yes* or *no*) are often introduced by ἄρα. Questions asking for specific information are introduced by e.g. πού; (*where?*), ποτε; (*when?*), πως; (*how?*).

CHAPTER THREE VOCABULARY

Nouns are given with nominative and genitive singular endings, and (as before) the article to show gender. Adjectives are given with masculine, feminine, and neuter nominative singular endings.

ἀγαθος -η -ον	good
ἀει	always
Ἀθηναίος -α -ον	Athenian
ανδρείος -α -ον	brave
ἀπο	from (+ <i>gen</i>)
αποθνήσκω	I die
ἀρα;	(introduces a question, e.g. Is it . . . ?)
γάρ*	for
γίγνωσκω	I get to know, I realise, I understand
δε*	but, and
δεινός -η -ον	strange, terrible
διότι	because
ἐθέλω	I wish, I am willing
ἐκ (ἐξ)	out of (+ <i>gen</i>)
ἐκεῖ	there
ἐλευθερός -α -ον	free
ἐν	in (+ <i>dat</i>)
ἐνθαδε	here
ἐχθρός -α -ον	hostile
θαυμάζω	I am amazed (at), I admire
κακός -η -ον	bad
καλός -η -ον	fine, beautiful
κέλευω	I order
μεν* . . . δε*	(expresses contrast, e.g. on the one hand . . . on the other, or just . . . but . . .)
μεντοί*	however
μικρός -α -ον	small
νέος -α -ον	new
νυν	now
οὖν*	therefore
παράγω	I produce, I provide
πείθω	I persuade
πίστευω	I trust, I believe (+ <i>dat</i>)
πολλάκις	often
ποτε;	when?
που;	where?
πρότερον	before, previously
πώς;	how?
σοφός -η -ον	wise, clever
χαλεπός -η -ον	difficult, dangerous
ὦ	O (or omit; used + <i>voc</i> , to address someone)

40 words

* comes second word in its sentence, clause or phrase

Chapter Four

AORIST TENSE (1)

- The simple past tense, used for a single action in the past (e.g. *he arrived*) is in Greek called the *aorist*.
- This is what other languages call just *past*, or *simple past*, or *past historic*. In Latin the perfect (literally *finished*) tense is used both for the simple past (*he arrived*) and for the less common 'true perfect' (*he has arrived*, implying *and is still here now*): only the context in a Latin sentence enables you to tell which it is. The perfect tense exists in Greek, but is used *only* for this 'true perfect' sense (almost equivalent to a present tense), is not very common and is not needed for GCSE. The normal past tense in Greek is the aorist (literally *unlimited*: i.e. a past tense not limited by a suggestion that the action is *incomplete* or *repeated* – like the imperfect – or that the action or its effect *still continues* – like the perfect).
- There are two different ways of forming the aorist, known as *first* and *second* aorist. Verbs have one or the other (in rare cases either is possible). They are differences just of form, not of meaning. First aorist is commoner and will be dealt with first.
- This situation is roughly comparable to English: most verbs add *-ed* to make a simple past tense (*arrived, walked, guarded*), and this can be thought of as equivalent to first aorist. But there exists also another broad category (*ran, sang*) – which roughly equates to second aorist – as well as some that are completely irregular (*went*), again with equivalents in Greek.
- To sum up: the *aorist* is the standard simple past tense, describing an action that happened once (*we walked, they ran*). The *first aorist* is the most common way of forming it, like English *-ed*.
- Like the imperfect, the aorist has the *augment* (epsilon with a smooth breathing) on the beginning of each bit to indicate that it is a past tense.
- The first aorist also normally adds sigma to the stem, like the future tense does.
- The first aorist is also often referred to as the *weak aorist*. This has nothing to do with emphasis or lack of it in its meaning, but simply refers to the fact that the stem needs to be 'strengthened' by the addition of sigma before the endings proper are added.

first (= weak) aorist:

<i>sg</i>	1	ἐ-παυ-σ-α	I stopped
	2	ἐ-παυ-σ-ας	you (sg) stopped
	3	ἐ-παυ-σ-ε(ν)*	he/she/it stopped
<i>pl</i>	1	ἐ-παυ-σ-αμεν	we stopped
	2	ἐ-παυ-σ-ατε	you (pl) stopped
	3	ἐ-παυ-σ-αν	they stopped

* again the movable nu is added (to make pronunciation easier) if the next word starts with a vowel, or if this is the last word in the sentence

- The person endings (the last bit, after the added sigma) therefore are:

<i>singular</i>	1	-α
	2	-ας
	3	-ε(ν)
<i>plural</i>	1	-αμεν
	2	-ατε
	3	-αν

The first aorist is easy to spot not only because of the combination of augment and sigma added to the stem, but by the characteristic vowel alpha that occurs in five of the six bits. The first aorist endings are also easy to learn, and to equate to person endings of other tenses:

- second person singular ends in sigma like other tenses you have met
- third person singular ends in epsilon (+ movable nu) like the imperfect
- first person plural ends -μεν like other tenses you have met
- second person plural ends in -τε like other tenses you have met
- third person plural ends in nu like the imperfect

Adding the sigma to some verbs where the stem ends in a consonant requires an adjustment of spelling similar to the future. For example:

<i>present</i>	<i>future</i>	<i>first (weak) aorist</i>
γραφω	γραψω	ἐγραψα
διδασκω	διδάξω	ἐδίδαξα
διωκω	διώξω	ἐδιώξα
θαυμαζω	θαυμασσω	ἐθαυμασα
λεγω	λεξω	ἐλεξα
πειθω	πεισω	ἐπεισα
πεμπω	πεμψω	ἐπεμψα

The aorist quickly becomes familiar because it is so common. It is the normal tense for telling a story in the past. It is also often contrasted with the imperfect (*we were in the middle of doing X* [imperfect] *when Y happened* [aorist]).

Exercise 4.1 (*All first [weak] aorists*)

Translate into English:

- 1 ἔλυσα
- 2 ἐπιστευσάμεν
- 3 ἐκέλευσε(ν)
- 4 ἐπαύσατε
- 5 ἔλεξαν
- 6 ἤκουσα*
- 7 ἐπεμψας
- 8 ἐγραψαν
- 9 ἐδιώξαμεν
- 10 ἐδίδαξε(ν)

* remember that when the augment is added to a word starting with alpha, the two vowels combine to make eta

Exercise 4.2 (*Mixed tenses*)

Translate into English:

- 1 ἄγομεν
- 2 ἐφυλάσσον (*two possible answers*)
- 3 ἐδιώξας
- 4 ἐφερομεν
- 5 φευγετε (*two possible answers*)
- 6 ἐπιστευσα
- 7 ἐπειθες
- 8 ἐπεισε(ν)
- 9 λυσομεν
- 10 ἐκέλευσατε

Exercise 4.3

Translate into Greek:

- 1 You (pl) released.
- 2 He trusted.
- 3 We ordered.
- 4 You (sg) sent.
- 5 They wrote.

Exercise 4.4 (*All verbs first [weak] aorist*)

Translate into English:

- 1 ό νεος δουλος έλυσε τους ίππους.
- 2 την επιστολην ούκ έγραψα.
- 3 ό ξενος έκελευσε τους αγγελους φευγειν.
- 4 τους του στρατηγου λογους έν τη άγορα ήκουσαμεν.
- 5 οί δουλοι τους ίππους προς το στρατοπεδον έδιωξαν.
- 6 οί του στρατηγου λογοι έπαυσαν την ναυμαχίαν.
- 7 ή κορη έπιστευσε τη του θεου φωνη.
- 8 έδίδαξα τους συμμαχους.
- 9 ό των ξενων άγγελος έλεξε νεους λογους.
- 10 οί του δημου συμμαχοι έπεμψαν τα δωρα.

Exercise 4.5

Convert these present tense verbs to first (weak) aorist, keeping the same person and number, each time writing the Greek word then translating it:

- 1 πανεις
- 2 κελευομεν
- 3 λυετε
- 4 πεμπουσι(ν)
- 5 γραφω

Background: Aesop's Fables

Aesop was a Greek slave who lived on the island of Samos in the sixth century BC. We have little reliable information about his life. A fable is usually defined as an anecdote with a moral, in which the characters are animals behaving as human beings. Fables were very popular in Greece. The most famous ones were attributed to Aesop. He may well have written the original versions of many of them himself, but the collection that has come down to us probably includes many that have been altered, and some that have been added from other sources.



Figure 4.1 *This 5th-century Attic red-figure vase shows the fox telling Aesop about animals. (Photo by De Agostini Picture Library/ via Getty Images.)*

Exercise 4.6

The Sun and the Frogs

θερος ἦν, καὶ ὁ τοῦ Ἥλιου γάμος. ζῶον οὖν ἕκαστον ἔχαιρε, καὶ δῶρον ἐπέμψεν. ὁ δὲ βατραχὸς τοῖς ἄλλοις ἐλέξε, “μῶροι· διὰ τι χαιρετε; ὁ γὰρ Ἥλιος ξηραίνει τὴν λιμνὴν. αἶν οὖν κακὰ πασχομεν. καὶ νυν ὁ ἥλιος υἱὸν ἰσῶς ἔξει· τὸν κινδυνὸν οὐ γινώσκετε.”

- 3 ὁ μῦθος φαίνει ὅτι πολλοὶ ἀνευ αἰτίας χαιρουσιν.

	θερος	summer
	Ἥλιος	sun
	γάμος	wedding
	ζῶον	animal
1	ἕκαστος	each
	χαιρῶ	I am happy, I rejoice
	βατραχὸς	frog
	ἄλλοι	others
	μῶρος	fool, foolish
2	διὰ τι;	why?
	ξηραίνει	I dry (something) up
	λιμνὴ	marsh
	πασχῶ	I suffer
	υἱός	son
4	ἰσῶς	perhaps
	ἔξει	future of εἶμι
	μῦθος	story
	φαίνω	I show
	ὅτι	that
5	πολλοὶ	many
	ἀνευ	without (+ gen)
	αἰτία	cause, reason

Exercise 4.7 (*Verbs in mixed tenses*)

Translate into English:

- 1 δυο ώρας έγγραφον, άλλα την επιστολήν οὐκ ἐπεμψα.
- 2 αἱ νικαὶ ἐπαυσαν τον κινδυνον.
- 3 διδάξω τε καὶ πείσω τους συμμαχους.
- 4 προς το δεσμητηριον ἐβαινομεν.
- 5 ὁ ἀγγελος ἐδίδαξε τον δημον.
- 6 ἐπει ἐμένομεν, τους του στρατηγου λογους ἤκουσαμεν.
- 7 οἱ δουλοι προς τον ποταμον τρεχουσιν.
- 8 ὁ στρατηγος τον τε στρατον καὶ τα πλοια ἐτάσσειν.
- 9 τους δουλους ἐλυσαμεν.
- 10 ἢ ἐσπερα την ναυμαχίαν ἐπαυσειν.

δυο two
ἐπει when

Exercise 4.8

The Frogs and their Ruler (1)

- οἱ βατραχοι ἀγγελους προς τον Δια ἐπεμψαν διوتي μοναρχον οὐκ εἶχον*.
οἱ των βατραχων ἀγγελοι ἐλεξαν· “ὦ Ζευ, μοναρχος εἰ των θεων. ἀρα
ἐθελεις μοναρχον τοις βατραχοις παρεχειν;” ὁ Ζευς ἐθαυμασε, καὶ
ἐρριψε ξύλον εἰς τον ποταμον. οἱ βατραχοι πρωτον μεν φοβον του ξυλου
5 εἶχον, καὶ ἐφευγον. ἐπειτα δε, ἐπει το ξυλον ἀκίνητον ἐμένε, πολλακις ἐπι
τω ξυλῳ ἐκαθίζον. φοβον γαρ νυν οὐκ εἶχον. ἐλεξαν οὖν τῷ ξυλῳ· “ὦ
ξενε, ἀρα θεος εἰ ἢ ἄνθρωπος ἢ ζῶον,” ἀλλὰ το ξυλον οὐκ ἐλεξεν.

* the augment added to a stem starting with epsilon already here contracts to form the diphthong ει

	βατραχος	frog
	Ζευς, <i>irreg acc</i> Δια	Zeus
	διوتي	because
	μοναρχος	ruler
4	ριπτω, <i>aorist</i> ἐρριψα	I throw
	ξύλον	log of wood
	πρωτον	at first
	ἐπειτα	then
	ἐπει	since, because
6	ἀκίνητος	motionless
	ἐπι	(+ <i>dative</i>) on
	καθίζω	I sit
	ἢ	or
	ζῶον	animal

Exercise 4.9

Give one English derivative from:

- 1 μοναρχος
- 2 ξυλον
- 3 φοβος
- 4 ζων
- 5 ανθρωπος

Exercise 4.10

Convert these singular phrases to plural, keeping the same case, then translate:

- 1 το ακινητον ξυλον
- 2 του μικρου βατραχου
- 3 την καλην φωνην
- 4 τω νεω νομω
- 5 ο σοφος θεος

Exercise 4.11

Convert these plural phrases to singular, keeping the same case, then translate:

- 1 τα καλα δενδρα
- 2 οι κακοι βατραχοι
- 3 τας νεας οικιας
- 4 τοις ανδρειοις συμμαχοις
- 5 των καλων νικων

Exercise 4.12

The Frogs and their Ruler (2)

- οἱ βατραχοὶ οὐκ ἠθέλον* το ξυλον ὡς μοναρχον ἔχειν, διότι
 ακινητον και οὐ χρησιμον ἦν. τους οὖν ἀγγελους προς τον Δια αὐθις
 ἐπεμψαν, διότι ἠθέλον τον θεον ἄλλον μοναρχον παρεχειν. οἱ των
 βατραχων ἀγγελοι ἐλεξαν “ὦ Ζευ, οἱ βατραχοι ἐθελουσιν ἄλλον
 5 μοναρχον ἔχειν διότι ὁ πρωτος ακινητος και οὐ χρησιμος ἐστιν.” ὁ οὖν
 Ζευς ὀργη ἐπεμψεν ὕδραν τοις βατραχοις. ἡ οὖν ὕδρα μοναρχος των
 βατραχων ἦν. ἡ ὕδρα τους βατραχους ἡσθιεν*.

οὐκ ἀει οὖν, ὡς ὁ μυθος φαινει, κακον ἐστι μοναρχον ἀργον ἔχειν.

* the augment added to a stem starting with epsilon already here lengthens the vowel to eta (this is more common than the contraction to form the diphthong ει, which we saw in the previous passage)

	βατραχος	frog
	ξυλον	log of wood
	ὡς	as
	μοναρχος	ruler
1	διότι	because
	ακινητος	motionless
	χρησιμος	useful
	Δια	<i>irregular accusative of Ζευς</i>
	αὐθις	again
3	ἄλλος	another
	πρωτος	first
	οργη	anger
	ὕδρα	hydra, monstrous water-snake
	ἐσθιω	I eat
8	μυθος	story
	φαινω	I show
	ἀργος	lazy, inactive

- Note that Greek has two words for ‘story’: μυθος tends to be used for a myth (its English derivative) or fable, λογος for a more factual or historical account.



Figure 4.2 In later versions of Aesop's fable, Zeus sent a stork instead of a watersnake, as depicted in this engraving. (Photo by Universal History Archive/UIG via Getty Images.)

AORIST TENSE (2)

- The alternative way of forming the aorist tense is known as the *second aorist* (or *strong aorist*). This is less common than the first aorist, but a significant number of frequently used verbs form their aorist in this way.
- The difference between the two types of aorist is simply one of *form*, not meaning.
- Like the imperfect and first aorist, the second aorist has the augment (epsilon with a smooth breathing) on the beginning of each bit to indicate that it is a past tense.
- The second aorist uses *exactly the same endings as the imperfect* (-ον, -εες, -ε(ν), -ομεν, -ετε, -ον), but puts them onto a *different stem*.
- This aorist stem is often a *shortened* or *telescoped* version of the present stem:

e.g. λαμβανω : present stem λαμβαν-, aorist stem λαβ-
 μανθανω : present stem μανθαν-, aorist stem μαθ-
 φευγω : present stem φευγ-, aorist stem φυγ-

The aorist stems need to be learned, though when you have seen a few you can often predict them.

- The alternative name *strong aorist* again has nothing to do with emphasis or meaning, but refers to the fact that with this type the stem does not need to be ‘strengthened’ by the addition of sigma before putting on the endings proper.

second (= strong) aorist:

<i>sg</i>	1	ἐ-λαβ-ον	I took
	2	ἐ-λαβ-ες	you (<i>sg</i>) took
	3	ἐ-λαβ-ε(ν)*	he/she/it took
<i>pl</i>	1	ἐ-λαβ-ομεν	we took
	2	ἐ-λαβ-ετε	you (<i>pl</i>) took
	3	ἐ-λαβ-ον	they took

* again the movable nu is added (to make pronunciation easier) if the next word starts with a vowel, or if this is the last word in the sentence

- Note that, although the augment and ending are the same, there is no confusion with the imperfect, because of the different stem:

e.g.	ἐ-λαμβαν-ομεν	we were taking	<i>imperfect</i>
	ἐ-λαβ-ομεν	we took	<i>second (strong) aorist</i>

- With some verbs the stem is changed more:

e.g.	ἄγω : aorist ἤγαγον	(aorist stem ἄγαγ-)*
	πιπτω : aorist ἔπεσον	(aorist stem πεσ-)

* Notice here the reduplication or repetition of the consonant, comparable to Latin perfect tenses such as *cecidi* (from *cado* = I fall). Also notice again (as we saw with the first aorist of ἀκούω) how, when the augment is added to a word starting with alpha, the two vowels *contract* (i.e. combine) to make eta.

- With a few verbs the aorist stem appears totally unrelated to the present (being originally from a different root: compare English *go, went*). These of course have to be learned:

e.g.	τρέχω : aorist ἔδραμον (aorist stem δραμ-)
------	--

- Here are some verbs you have met already with second (strong) aorists:

<i>present</i>		<i>aorist</i>	<i>aorist stem</i>
ἄγω	I lead	ἤγαγον	ἄγαγ-
εὕρισκω	I find	ἤύρην*	εὕρ-
έχω	I have	έσχον	σχ-
λαμβάνω	I take	έλαβον	λαβ-
λείπω	I leave	έλιπον	λιπ-
μανθάνω	I learn	έμαθον	μαθ-
πιπτω	I fall	έπεσον	πεσ-
τρέχω	I run	έδραμον	δραμ-
φευγώ	I run away	έφυγον	φυγ-

* Note that when the augment is added to epsilon forming part of a diphthong, this too results in eta here; and that the syllable remains a diphthong (both vowels pronounced together), indicated by the breathing being on the second letter.

- Note also that λεγω (*I say*), in addition to a first (weak) aorist έλεξα, also has a second (strong) aorist ειπον, from a different root but with the same meaning (and more commonly found). The aorist stem of this is ειπ- (unusually not changing to remove the augment).

Exercise 4.13 (*All second [strong] aorists*)

Translate into English:

- έλαβετε
- έφυγομεν
- έμαθον (*two possible answers*)
- έλιπες
- ήγαγε(ν)
- εδραμον (*two possible answers*)
- έπεσετε
- ηύρομεν
- έσχον (*two possible answers*)
- είπες

Exercise 4.14 (*Imperfect and second [strong] aorist*)

Each time, state whether the verb is imperfect or aorist, then translate into English:

- 1 ἐλαμβάνες
- 2 ἔλαβες
- 3 ἐμάνθανομεν
- 4 ἔμαθε(ν)
- 5 ἦγετε
- 6 ἤγαγον (*two possible answers*)
- 7 ἐφυγομεν
- 8 ἐφευγες
- 9 ἐλιπον (*two possible answers*)
- 10 ἐλειπε(ν)

Exercise 4.15

Translate into Greek:

- 1 We left.
- 2 They took.
- 3 You (*sg*) learned.
- 4 You (*pl*) ran away.
- 5 I led.

Exercise 4.16 (*Mixed tenses: imperfect, first [weak] and second [strong] aorist*)

Translate into English:

- 1 ἐδράμε(ν)
- 2 ἐφυλασσομεν
- 3 ελαβετε
- 4 ηκουσαν
- 5 ἔφερον (*two possible answers*)
- 6 ηυρετε
- 7 εγραψατε
- 8 ἐφευγον (*two possible answers*)
- 9 ἔσχες
- 10 επεσετε

Exercise 4.17 (*All verbs second [strong] aorist*)

Translate into English:

- 1 οἱ ἄνδρειοι συμμαχοὶ οὐκ ἔφυγον.
- 2 ἔμαθομεν τοὺς τῶν ξενῶν νομοὺς.
- 3 ὁ δούλος εἰς τὸν ποταμὸν ἔπεσεν.
- 4 τὰ ὅπλα ἐν τῷ ἱερῷ ἔλιπον. (*two possible answers*)
- 5 ὁ στρατηγὸς εἰς τὸ στρατοπεδὸν ἐδραμεν.

- Here are three new common verbs with second (strong) aorists, illustrating the various ways in which the aorist stem (always *different* from the present stem, in one way or another) can be formed:

- 1 (*stem shortened or telescoped*):
βαλλῶ I throw: aorist ἔβαλον (*aorist stem βαλ-*)
- 2 (*stem changed more, but still related*):
πασχῶ I suffer: aorist ἔπαθον (*aorist stem παθ-*)
- 3 (*stem completely different, from separate root*):
ἐσθίω I eat: aorist ἔφαγον (*aorist stem φαγ-*)

- English derivatives from verbs with second (strong) aorists quite often come from the aorist stem rather than the present: e.g. *mathematics*, *pathology*.
- The extent to which the stem changes for the second (strong) aorist of course affects how similar or otherwise it is to the imperfect. If the stem just shortens slightly, the forms for the two tenses may differ only by one letter (e.g. βαλλῶ : imperfect ἐβαλλον, second [strong] aorist ἔβαλον). If however the aorist stem is from a different root, the forms for the two tenses will be completely different (though with the same endings), because the imperfect uses the present stem (e.g. τρεχῶ : imperfect ἐτρεχον, second [strong] aorist ἐδραμον).
- To recap: alternative names for the two types of aorist are *weak* (for *first*) and *strong* (for *second*). The logic of these is that the *weak* aorist does not have a distinctive stem and so needs to have its identity as an aorist strengthened by the addition of sigma and the distinctive alpha endings; the *strong* aorist does have its own stem, and so does not need this reinforcement. These terms refer only to the *formation* of the aorist tense, and do not imply any difference of emphasis in the *meaning*. The terms *first* and *second* avoid any such impression, and are now more commonly used.

REVISION CHECKPOINT

Make sure you know

- what the aorist tense is used for, and the two main ways of forming it:
 - (1) first (weak) aorist: augment, present stem, normally plus sigma, then the distinctive endings (mostly including alpha): -α, -ας, -ε(ν), -αμεν, -ατε, -αν
 - (2) second (strong) aorist: augment, distinctive aorist stem, then the same endings as the imperfect: -ον, -ες, -ε(ν), -ομεν, -ετε, -ον

- Here are all the second (strong) aorists you have met so far. Notice the various ways in which the aorist stem differs from the present:

<i>present</i>	<i>present stem</i>	<i>meaning</i>	<i>aorist</i>	<i>aorist stem</i>
ἄγω	ἄγ-	I lead	ἤγαγον	αγαγ-
βαλλω	βαλλ-	I throw	έβαλον	βαλ-
ἐσθιω	ἐσθι-	I eat	έφαγον	φαγ-
εὕρισκω	εύρισκ-	I find	ἠύρον	εύρ-
έχω	έχ-	I have	έσχον	σχ-
λαμβάνω	λαμβάν-	I take	έλαβον	λαβ-
λέγω	λέγ-	I speak, I say	είπον	είπ-
λείπω	λείπ-	I leave	έλιπον	λιπ-
μανθάνω	μανθαν-	I learn	έμαθον	μαθ-
πάσχω	πάσχ-	I suffer	έπαθον	παθ-
πιπτω	πιπτ-	I fall	έπεσον	πεσ-
τρέχω	τρέχ-	I run	έδραμον	δραμ-
φεύγω	φευγ-	I run away	έφυγον	φυγ-

Exercise 4.18

Convert these present tense verbs to second (strong) aorist, keeping the same person and number, each time writing the Greek word then translating it:

- 1 βαλλετε
- 2 ἐσθιει
- 3 λαμβανεις
- 4 λειπουσι(ν)
- 5 πιπτει

Exercise 4.19

Zeus and the Tortoise

ὁ Ζεὺς τοῖς ζῴοις δειπνὸν παρέσχεν. ἡ δὲ χελωνὴ μόνῃ οὐ παρήν. ὁ οὖν Ζεὺς ἐθαύμασεν. τῇ δὲ ὑστεραία εἶπε τῇ χελωνῇ “διὰ τί σὺ μόνῃ οὐ παρήσθα;” “οἴκῃ φίλῃ, οἴκῃ ἀριστη” εἶπεν ἡ χελωνή. ἔπειτα δὲ ὁ Ζεὺς διὰ ὀργῇν ἐκέλευσε τὴν χελωνὴν τὴν οἰκίαν ἀεὶ φερεῖν.

Ζεὺς Διὸς ὁ*	Zeus
ζῶον -ου το	animal
δειπνὸν -ου το	dinner
παρέχω παρέσχον	I provide
1 χελωνή -ης ἡ	tortoise
μόνος -η -ον	alone, only
παρεῖμι <i>imperfect</i> παρήν	I am present (<i>formed like</i> εἰμι)
τῇ ὑστεραία	on the next day
διὰ τί;	why?
2 σὺ	you (sg)
φίλος -η -ον	dear
ἀριστος -η -ον	best
ἔπειτα	then
διὰ	through, on account of (+ <i>acc</i>)
4 ὀργῇ -ης ἡ	anger

* From this point onwards, vocabulary for passages will usually be given with the following grammar details:

nominative, genitive, and article (to show gender) for nouns
 present and aorist (first person singulars) for verbs
 masculine, feminine, and neuter (nominative singulars) for adjectives
 case taken by prepositions

GENDER AND DECLENSION (1)

- As in Latin, there is a broad correlation in Greek between gender and declension: most words in the first declension are feminine; and in the second declension most are masculine, with a distinctive variant type that is neuter. But there are exceptions. In Latin, second declension feminine words are very few indeed (they include names of trees, e.g. *fagus* = beech). In Greek there are rather more, and they include some very common words. Here are four:

βιβλος	book
νησος	island
νοσος	disease
ὁδος	road, journey

They decline exactly like masculine second declension nouns, but of course have the feminine forms of the article and of adjectives with them. (Because these must *agree* in number, gender, and case – not necessarily have identical endings or ‘rhyme’.)

Hence, e.g.

την καλην βιβλον
τας κακας νοσους

(Contrast more straightforward examples such as:

την καλην κωμην
τας κακας οικιας
τον καλον ιππον
τους κακους νομους

where the nouns have the more typical gender for their declensions.)

Exercise 4.20

Translate into English:

- 1 ηύρομεν τας νεας βιβλους.
- 2 ό δουλος κακην νοσον έχει.
- 3 έν τη όδω κινδυνος ήν.
- 4 οί ξενοι έκ της νησου έφυγον.
- 5 έλιπομεν τας μικρας νησους.

GENDER AND DECLENSION (2)

- Just as we saw that there are some feminine nouns in the second declension, there are also some masculine ones in the first declension. As in Latin, these are mostly words denoting male occupations or roles (*sailor, poet* in both languages; in Greek also *judge, young man* and others).
- This time some small changes are made to the declension. Masculine nouns of the first declension in the nominative singular add sigma to what the ending would be for a feminine noun. So, corresponding to feminine nouns like *τιμη* are the masculine ones:

κριτης	judge
ναυτης	sailor
ποιητης	poet
πολιτης	citizen
στρατιωτης	soldier

Like τιμη, these have eta in the ending because the stem ends in a consonant. But there are also a few corresponding to χωρα (where the stem ends in iota or rho), with alpha in the ending:

νεανιας young man

- Probably because the nominative would with these nouns otherwise be the same as the genitive, the genitive changes to -ου: i.e. masculine nouns in the first declension *borrow* the genitive ending of the more naturally masculine second declension (like λογος).

Hence the singular declensions are:

<i>nom</i>	ναυτ-ης*	νεανι-ας*
<i>acc</i>	ναυτ-ην	νεανι-αν
<i>gen</i>	ναυτ-ου	νεανι-ου
<i>dat</i>	ναυτ-η	νεανι-α

* the vocative for both types ends in alpha: ναυτ-α, νεανι-α

- In the plural they have the same endings as any first declension noun:

-αι, -ας, -ων, -αις

- These nouns must of course have the masculine forms of the article and of adjectives (because these must *agree* in number, gender, and case).

Exercise 4.21

Change from singular to plural or vice versa, keeping the same case; write the new version of the Greek, then translate it into English:

- 1 ὁ αγαθος ποιητης
- 2 οἱ ἀνδρειοι στρατιωται
- 3 του σοφου κριτου
- 4 τους κακους νεανιας*
- 5 τον νεον ναυτην

* note that the accusative plural here has the same ending as the nominative singular

Exercise 4.22*Translate into English:*

- 1 ἐπιστευσάμεν τῷ κριτῇ.
- 2 ἀκούε τοὺς τοῦ στρατηγοῦ λόγους, ὦ στρατιῶτα.
- 3 ὁ νεανίας πρὸς τὴν οἰκίαν ἔδραμεν.
- 4 οἱ ἀνδρεῖοι ναῦται οὐκ ἐφυγον.
- 5 οἱ πολῖται ἐν τῇ ἐκκλησίᾳ ἦσαν.
- 6 ὁ ποιητὴς σοφός.
- 7 τοὺς στρατιώτας τοὺς ἀνδρείους θαυμάζομεν.
- 8 ὁ τῶν νεανίων διδασκαλὸς οὐκ ἐστὶ πολίτης.
- 9 ὁ στρατηγὸς τοὺς νεοὺς στρατιώτας ἐτάσσει.
- 10 τοὺς τε ναύτας καὶ τοὺς στρατιώτας πέμπετε, ὦ πολῖται.

Exercise 4.23*Translate into Greek:*

- 1 The brave young men ran to the village.
- 2 The judge's house is new.
- 3 The soldier fell into the river.
- 4 We sent the sailors to the prison.
- 5 You (sg) trusted the wise citizens.

SAC

Exercise 4.24 (Revision)*Translate into English:*

- 1 ὁ σοφὸς κριτὴς ἐπιστολὴν ἐγράψεν.
- 2 οἱ ἵπποι οἱ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ καλοὶ εἰσιν.
- 3 τοὺς νεανίας πρὸς τὴν κωμὴν ἐπέμψα.
- 4 ἡ κορὴ νεαν βίβλον νυν ἔχει.
- 5 οἱ ναῦται τὰ πλοῖα ἐλίπον.
- 6 οἱ στρατιῶται τὰ ὅπλα ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου ἔλαβον.
- 7 τάσσει τὸν στρατὸν, ὦ στρατηγε.
- 8 οἱ πολῖται τὸν σοφὸν κριτὴν ἐθαυμάζον.
- 9 οἱ στρατιῶται τὰς πύλας ἐφύλασσον.
- 10 ὁ ναυτὴς ἐκ τοῦ πλοίου ἐπέσει.

Exercise 4.25

Give one English derivative from:

- 1 κριτης
- 2 έμαθον
- 3 ναυτης
- 4 πολιτης
- 5 στρατηγος

GENDER AND DECLENSION (3)

- You have now seen almost all forms of first and second declension nouns. There remain a couple of oddments in the first declension.
- Both the feminine and the masculine nouns in the first declension normally have eta or alpha in the singular endings, according to how the stem ends: eta after a consonant, alpha after iota or rho. Hence:

<i>feminine</i>	τιμη, χωρα
<i>masculine</i>	ναυτης, νεανιας

But among feminine nouns there are a few exceptions:

- (1) κορη (*girl*) declines like τιμη, even though stem ends in rho.
- (2) Some nouns are exceptions the other way round, i.e. they have alpha as the nominative ending even though the stem ends in a consonant (usually sigma). But in this case they revert after the accusative to the eta that would be more natural after a consonant:

<i>nom</i>	θαλασσ-α	sea
<i>acc</i>	θαλασσ-αν	
<i>gen</i>	θαλασσ-ης	
<i>dat</i>	θαλασσ-η	

- These various exceptions and minor changes may seem confusing, but the variants within first declension singulars (all plurals are the same, and straightforward) can easily be represented by a table of endings:

<i>nom</i>	-η	or	-α	(adds -ς if masculine)
<i>acc</i>	-ην	or	-αν	
<i>gen</i>	-ης	or	-ας	(changes to -ου if masculine)
<i>dat</i>	-η	or	-α	

REVISION OVERVIEW OF FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION NOUNS

first declension:

		<i>feminine:</i>			<i>masculine:</i>	
		honour	country	sea	sailor	young man
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	τιμ-η	χωρ-α	θαλασσ-α	ναυτ-ης	νεανι-ας
	<i>acc</i>	τιμ-ην	χωρ-αν	θαλασσ-αν	ναυτ-ην	νεανι-αν
	<i>gen</i>	τιμ-ης	χωρ-ας	θαλασσ-ης	ναυτ-ου	νεανι-ου
	<i>dat</i>	τιμ-η	χωρ-α	θαλασσ-η	ναυτ-η (νoc ναυτ-α)	νεανι-α (νoc νεανι-α)
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	τιμ-αι	χωρ-αι	θαλασσ-αι	ναυτ-αι	νεανι-αι
	<i>acc</i>	τιμ-ας	χωρ-ας	θαλασσ-ας	ναυτ-ας	νεανι-ας
	<i>gen</i>	τιμ-ων	χωρ-ων	θαλασσ-ων	ναυτ-ων	νεανι-ων
	<i>dat</i>	τιμ-αις	χωρ-αις	θαλασσ-αις	ναυτ-αις	νεανι-αις

second declension:

		<i>masculine:*</i>	<i>neuter:</i>
		word	gift
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	λογ-ος	δωρ-ον
	<i>acc</i>	λογ-ον	δωρ-ον
	<i>gen</i>	λογ-ου	δωρ-ου
	<i>dat</i>	λογ-ω (νoc λογ-ε)	δωρ-ω
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	λογ-οι	δωρ-α
	<i>acc</i>	λογ-ους	δωρ-α
	<i>gen</i>	λογ-ων	δωρ-ων
	<i>dat</i>	λογ-οις	δωρ-οις

* feminine nouns such as βιβλος (*book*) are identical in declension.

Exercise 4.26

Translate into English:

- 1 ὁ καλὸς ἵππος ἐκ τῆς θαλάσσης ἔδραμεν.
- 2 ἡ κορὴ ἢ ἀνδρεία ἔδωξε τὸν δούλον.
- 3 ὁ ξένος δούλος μὲν ἦν· νυν δὲ ἐλευθερὸς ἐστίν.
- 4 νεὰς βίβλους τοῖς νεανίαις παρέχειν ἐθέλω.
- 5 ὁ ποιητὴς τὴν τῶν θεῶν σοφίαν μανθάνει τε καὶ διδάσκει.

COMPOUND VERBS

- Many common prepositions can also be used as prefixes to form compound verbs:

e.g.	πρὸς = towards	
	<i>as preposition</i>	πρὸς τὴν θαλάσσαν towards the sea
	<i>as prefix</i>	προστρέχειν to run towards
	ἐκ = out of	
	<i>as preposition</i>	ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου out of the camp
	<i>as prefix</i>	ἐκβαίνω I go out

It is usually easy to work out the meaning of a compound, and it is not necessary to learn them all individually.

- Greek often uses the same prefix/preposition twice, for slight extra emphasis:

ἐκβαίνει ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου.

literally

He goes out out of the camp.

but in fact just

He goes out of the camp.

- It is also possible however to give two separate pieces of information, one by a prefix and another by a preposition:

ἐκβαίνει εἰς τὴν ὁδόν.

He goes out (*implying from his house, or wherever he is*) into the road.

- Sometimes Greek uses compounds where they are not strictly necessary, and some verbs are normally found only in compound form. You have met two:

ἀποθνήσκω	I die
ἀποκτείνω	I kill

You could explain the prefix as implying ‘away from life’, but in practice it is hardly noticed.

- When compound verbs form their past tenses, the augment goes after the prefix:

προστρέχω	I run towards
προσεδράμουν	I ran towards

- ἐκ either as a preposition or a prefix always changes to ἐξ before a vowel. Hence, e.g. ἐξαγω = *I lead out*. If the verb stem starts with a consonant, the prefix is ἐκ- in the present tense, but changes to ἐξ- in the imperfect and aorist, because the augment has introduced a vowel. Hence:

ἐκβαίνεις	you (sg) go out
ἐξεβαίνες	you (sg) were going out

- Similarly ἀπο- changes to ἀπ- before a vowel, whether because the verb stem starts with a vowel (e.g. ἀπαγω = *I lead away*) or because the augment is inserted: hence

ἀποτρέχομεν	we run away
ἀπεδράμομεν	we ran away

- The aorist of ἀποθνήσκω is ἀπεθάνον (second [strong] aorist), and the aorist of ἀποκτείνω is ἀπεκτείνᾱ (first [weak] aorist; without the usual sigma, but otherwise with the normal endings)

Exercise 4.27

Translate into English:

- 1 ὁ νεανίας ἐξαγει τον ἵππον.
- 2 ὁ δούλος ἐκ τῆς οἰκίας ἐξεδράμεν.
- 3 αἱ κοραὶ πρὸς τὸ τῆς θεᾶς ἱερὸν προσεβαίνον.
- 4 ὁ ἄγγελος εἰς τὸν ποταμὸν εἰσεπέσεν.
- 5 ὁ διδασκαλὸς ἐθέλει ἀποβαλλεῖν τὴν βιβλὸν.
- 6 ὁ κακὸς στρατηγὸς τοὺς δούλους ἀπεκτείνεν.
τὴν ἐπιστολὴν πρὸς τὴν ἐκκλησίαν προσεπέμψα.
- 8 οἱ πολῖται εἰς τὴν ἀγορὰν ἐκτρέχουσιν.
- 9 ὁ ποιητὴς ὁ μεγίστος ἀπεθάνεν.
- 10 οἱ συμμαχοὶ τὸ ναυτικὸν πρὸς τὴν νῆσον προσηγάγον.
μεγίστος -η -ον very great

Exercise 4.28

Translate into Greek:

- 1 You (*pl*) go away.
- 2 We run towards the house.
- 3 They ran out.
- 4 He died.
- 5 We were throwing away the books.

REVISION CHECKPOINT

Make sure you know:

- how gender and declension relate to each other
- first declension masculine nouns like κριτης and νεανιας
- first declension feminine nouns like θαλασσα
- how these less common forms fit into the overall pattern of the first and second declensions
- how compound verbs work
- the relation of prefixes and prepositions

Exercise 4.29**The Stag and the Lion****THE STAG AT THE POOL**

REPRODUCTION OF AN ILLUSTRATION IN THE EDITION OF AESOP'S FABLES PRINTED
BY GERMAN PRINTERS FOR FRANCESCO DEL TUPPO, AT NAPLES, 1485

L. 36

Victoria and Albert Museum

Figure 4.3 Aesop's fable of the Stag at the Pool. Engraving from an Italian 1485 edition.
(Photo by Culture Club/Getty Images.)

A thirsty stag came to a spring. After drinking he noticed his own reflection in the water. He was proud of his magnificent antlers, but dissatisfied with his spindly legs. At that moment a lion appeared and ran towards him. The stag started to run away.

- ὁ ἐλαφος, διότι ταχιστα τρεχειν οἷος τ' ἦν, ὀαδιως ἐξεφυγεν, και μεχοι
 οὐκ ἦν δένδρα ἐν τοῖς ἀγροῖς, ὁ λεων τον ἐλαφον οὐκ ελαβεν. ἀλλὰ ἐπει
 εις την ὕλην εἰσεδραμον, ὁ ἐλαφος ἐν κινδυνῳ ἦν. οἱ γὰρ των δενδρων
κλαδοι ἐνεποδισαν τα του ἐλαφου κερατα. ὁ οὖν ἐλαφος ουκετι οἷος τ' ἦν
 5 τρεχειν. ὁ δε λεων προσεδραμεν. ὁ οὖν ἐλαφος προ του θανατου εἶπε·
 “προτερον μεν ἐθαυμασα τα κερατα, οὐ τα κωλα, νυν δε τα κερατα ἐμε
 ἀπεκτεινεν.”

ὁ μυθος φαινει ὅτι ἐν κινδυνῳ ραδιον ἐστι φίλοις κακοῖς πιστευειν.

	ἐλαφος -ου ὁ	stag
	ταχιστα	very fast
	οἷος τ' εἶμι	I am able (formed as adjective + εἶμι)
	ραδιος -α -ον	easy
1	ἐκφευγω ἐξεφυγον	I escape
	μεχοι	as long as, while
	ἀγρος -ου ὁ	field
	λεων ὁ	lion
	ὕλη -ης ἡ	forest
4	κλαδος -ου ὁ	branch
	ἐμποδιζω ἐνεποδισα	obstruct, get in the way of
	κερατα -ων τα	antlers
	οὐκετι	no longer
	προ	before
6	κωλον -ου το	leg
	ἐμε	me
	φαινω	I show

SUMMARY OF CHAPTER FOUR GRAMMAR

Aorist tense (1)

The aorist tense is used for a single action in the past. It has two forms (some verbs use one, some the other). There is no difference of meaning. First (or 'weak') aorist has the augment (ἐ-), and usually adds sigma to the stem (like the future does), then alpha-based endings: -α, -ας, -ε, -αμεν, -ατε, -αν, e.g. ἐπαυσα (*I stopped*).

Aorist tense (2)

Second (or 'strong') aorist also has the augment (ἐ-), and uses the same endings as the imperfect (-ον, -ες, -ε, -ομεν, -ετε, -ον), but added to a different stem, which is either a shortened/telescoped version of the present stem, e.g. ἐμαθον (*I learned*) from μανθानω, or irregular, e.g. ἔδραμον (*I ran*) from τρεχω.

Gender and declension (1)

Most second declension nouns ending -ος are masculine, but some e.g. βιβλος (*book*) are feminine. There is no difference in how they decline. Adjectives and the definite article agree with nouns by gender, not declension.

Gender and declension (2)

Most first declension nouns are feminine, but some are masculine. These add -ς to the nominative singular, and borrow the genitive -ου from second declension. There are masculine equivalents of τιμη (e.g. ναυτης = *sailor*) and of χωρα (e.g. νεανιας = *young man*).

Gender and declension (3)

First declension feminine nouns usually end in eta after a consonant, alpha after iota or rho, but there are exceptions. If a noun has alpha as nominative singular after a consonant (usually sigma), it changes to eta in the genitive and dative (e.g. θαλασσα = *sea*, genitive θαλασσης).

Compound verbs

Many prepositions are also used as prefixes to form compound verbs, e.g. ἐκβαινω (*I go out*).

Greek often uses the same prefix/preposition twice, for emphasis (e.g. ἐκβαινω ἐκ της οικιας = *I go out of the house*), but can also use different ones to give two pieces of information (e.g. ἐκβαινω εις την οδον = *I go out into the street*).

CHAPTER FOUR VOCABULARY

Some verbs you have met already are given again here with their aorist. (Irregular aorists are also given alphabetically in the vocabulary in the back of the book.) Some compound verbs are given here so that their formation becomes familiar, but you should get used to working them out.

ἀγω ἡγαγον	I lead
ἀποβαλλω ἀπεβαλον	I throw away
βαλλω ἔβαλον	I throw
βιβλος -ου ἡ	book
γράφω ἐγραψα	I write
διδασκω ἐδίδαξα	I teach
διώκω ἐδιώξα	I chase
δυο	two
εἰσπιπτω εἰσεπεσον	I fall into
ἐκβαίνω	I go out
ἐκτρέχω ἐξεδραμον	I run out
ἐξαγω ἐξηγαγον	I lead out
ἐπει	when, since
ἐπειτα	then, next
ἐσθίω ἐφαγον	I eat
εὕρισκω ἤυρον	I find
ἔχω ἔσχον	I have
θαλασσα -ης ἡ	sea
κελεύω ἐκελευσα	I order
κριτης -ου ὁ	judge
λαμβάνω ἔλαβον	I take
λέγω (ἐλεξα οτ) εἶπον	I say, I speak
λείπω ἐλιπον	I leave
λυω ἔλυσα	I release, I untie
μανθάνω ἐμαθον	I learn
μεγιστος -η -ον	very great, very big
μετα	(+ <i>acc</i>) after
μυθος -ου ὁ	story (myth, fable)
ναυτης -ου ὁ	sailor
νεανιας -ου ὁ	young man
νησος -ου ἡ	island
νοσος -ου ἡ	disease, illness
ὁδος -ου ἡ	road, way
πάσχω ἐπαθον	I suffer
πείθω ἐπεισα	I persuade
πέμπω ἐπεμψα	I send
πιπτω ἐπεσον	I fall
πιστεύω ἐπιστευσα	I trust, I believe (+ <i>dat</i>)
ποιητης -ου ὁ	poet

πολιτης -ου ό	citizen
προσαγω προσηγαγον	I lead to(wards)
προσβαινω	I go to(wards)
προσπεμπω προσεπεμψα	I send to(wards)
προστρεχω προσεδραμον	I run to(wards)
πρωτον	first, at first
στρατιωτης -ου ό	soldier
τρεχω έδραμον	I run
φευγω έφυγον	I run away
φυλασσω έφυλαξα	I guard
χρήσιμος -η -ον	useful
ώς	as

51 words

Chapter Five

ACCENTS

Accents (acute ´, grave ` , and circumflex ˘) were not used in the period when most of the famous Greek authors lived but were a later development. They have not been used so far in this book. Greek texts are however by long tradition normally printed with accents, and they are introduced from this point onwards (you will already have noticed them in the Greek-to-English vocabulary at the back of the book).

Accents were devised about 200 BC as an aid to pronunciation, originally indicating pitch (acute high, grave low, circumflex falling from high to low). This is very difficult for English speakers to reproduce. Later they were (all) taken as *stress* accents. This *can* be reproduced easily enough, but the tradition in Britain since the seventeenth century has been to stress Greek words of several syllables on the same principle as Latin ones: on the next-to-last (penultimate) syllable if that is *long* or *heavy*, on the third from the end (antepenultimate) if the penultimate is *short* or *light*. Hence ἀνθρώπος would traditionally be stressed on the penultimate (*di-DUM-di*), ἀγαθός on the antepenultimate (here first) syllable (*DUM-di-di*). In both cases this is different from where the accent is written. Like many traditions, the British pronunciation has little logical justification. If you wish to be in the forefront of reform, you can pronounce Greek words with the stress on the accented syllable: ἀνθρώπος as *DUM-di-di*, ἀγαθός as *di-di-DUM*. This is done in many continental countries, and has the effect of making classical Greek sound more like the modern language that is its descendant. On the other hand, since stressing the accented syllable is still a compromise (a second-best representation of the original *pitch* accent), you may prefer to stick with tradition. The important thing as always is to be clear and consistent.

- Knowledge of accents is not required for GCSE or A-level. You should not attempt to include accents when you translate English-to-Greek sentences.
- Accents sometimes differentiate otherwise identical words. In such cases, attention is drawn to them in this book. (These instances however are few, and ambiguity is usually avoided anyway by the context.)

THIRD DECLENSION NOUNS

This is the only remaining category of nouns (there is no fourth or fifth declension, as in Latin). The third declension includes masculine, feminine and neuter nouns. There is no difference in declension between masculine and feminine ones. Neuter nouns in this declension resemble those in the second declension by having nominative and accusative the same, and by having nominative and accusative plural ending in alpha (this is also of course similar to Latin neuter nouns both of second declension – e.g. *bellum* – and of third – e.g. *nomen*).

A list of third declension nouns in the nominative singular shows a wide variety of endings (the article is added to show gender, as it usually is in wordlists):

γερων	ὁ	old man
γίγας	ὁ	giant
νύξ	ἡ	night
ὄνομα	τό	name
σῶμα	τό	body
φυλαξ	ὁ	guard

But the more important part is the *genitive stem*, which is not necessarily visible in the nominative: this stem needs to be learned, though (just as with second [strong] aorist stems of verbs) there are recurrent patterns, and clues from English derivatives. You then just need to learn the endings and add them to the stem. The last noun listed above has φυλακ-ος as its genitive (-ος is the genitive singular ending), i.e. its genitive stem is φυλακ-, and it would normally be listed as:

φυλαξ -ακος ο (*abbreviated form of φυλαξ φύλακος*)

Understanding the principle avoids the necessity to learn several different types of third declension noun separately. (It is usual to list nouns of any declension by giving the nominative and genitive, but this is particularly important for third declension).

- The pattern of endings for third declension is:

sg	nom	(wide range of possibilities)	
	acc	stem + α	for masc and fem; same as nom if neuter
	gen	stem + ος	
	dat	stem + ι	
pl	nom	stem + ες	for masc and fem; stem + α if neuter
	acc	stem + ας	for masc and fem; stem + α if neuter
	gen	stem + ων	
	dat	stem + σι(ν)*	

* movable nu is added if the next word starts with a vowel, or if this is the last word in the sentence

- Notice some further broad similarities to Latin: the principle of using the genitive stem (compare e.g. *rex, regis*: stem *reg-*); a comparable ending in genitive singular (-ος where Latin has *-is*); similar endings in dative singular (-ι / *-i*) and in masculine/feminine nominative plural (-ες / *-es*), though Greek has a different accusative.
- For a typical masculine noun this gives:

φύλαξ -ακος ό = guard (stem φυλακ-)

sg	nom	φύλαξ
	acc	φύλακ-α
	gen	φυλακ-ος
	dat	φύλακ-ι
pl	nom	φύλακ-ες
	acc	φύλακ-ας
	gen	φυλάκ-ων
	dat	φύλαξι(ν)*

* the dative plural represents φυλακ-σι(ν), because as usual kappa followed by sigma produces xi

- And for a typical neuter noun:

σῶμα -ατος τό = body (stem σωματ-)

sg	nom	σῶμα
	acc	σῶμα
	gen	σώματ-ος
	dat	σώματ-ι
pl	nom	σώματ-α
	acc	σώματ-α
	gen	σώματ-ων
	dat	σώμασι*

* here the dative plural represents σωματ-σι, with the tau dropped to aid pronunciation

- Here again is the list of nouns, showing genitive and stem:

γέρων -οντος	ό	old man	(stem γεροντ-)
γίγας -αντος	ό	giant	(stem γιγαντ-)
νύξ νυκτός	ή	night	(stem νυκτ-)
ὄνομα -ατος	τό	name	(stem ονοματ-)
σῶμα -ατος	τό	body	(stem σωματ-)
φύλαξ -ακος	ό	guard	(stem φυλακ-)

- Notice the convention that monosyllabic nouns such as νύξ usually have their genitive written out in full in a wordlist.

Exercise 5.1

Give the Greek for the following, with the appropriate form of the article (take care with the gender). Example:

The guards (*nominative*) answer: οἱ φύλακες

- 1 The giant (*accusative*)
- 2 Of the old men (*genitive*)
- 3 The nights (*accusative*)
- 4 For the name (*dative*)
- 5 The body (*accusative*)

- Here are two of the main types of third declension noun. Notice how they follow the pattern described above.

γέρων -οντος ὁ = old man (stem γεροντ-)

sg	nom	γέρων	(voc γέρον)
	acc	γέροντ-α	
	gen	γέροντ-ος	
	dat	γέροντ-ι	
pl	nom	γέροντ-ες	
	acc	γέροντ-ας	
	gen	γερόντ-ων	
	dat	γέρουσι(ν)*	

* Again there is an adjustment to the dative plural in the interests of pronunciation. This represents γεροντ-σι(ν). The contracted form resembles the third person plural ending of a verb e.g. παυ-ουσι(ν), and this is not just coincidence, because the verb form similarly represents an original παυ-οντι – compare e.g. *portant* in Latin – altered over time in pronunciation.

γίγας -αντος ὁ = giant (stem γιγαντ-)

sg	nom	γίγας	
	acc	γίγαντ-α	
	gen	γίγαντ-ος	
	dat	γίγαντ-ι	
pl	nom	γίγαντ-ες	
	acc	γίγαντ-ας	
	gen	γιγάντ-ων	
	dat	γίγασι(ν)*	

* A similar thing happens again. This represents γιγαντ-σι(ν), adjusted in the interests of pronunciation.

- The vocative singular is for many third declension nouns the same as the nominative. Where it has a special form (as with γέρον), this is usually a shortened version of the nominative (or of the stem): a long vowel becomes short, or a final consonant is dropped.
- The dative plural is the only part of a third declension noun that cannot always be predicted exactly, given the stem and gender. But even the dative plural often can be predicted once you have seen a few. The nominative singular can give a clue to it:

φύλαξ	becomes	φύλαξι(ν)
γίγας	becomes	γίγασι(ν)

Similarly:

νύξ	becomes	νύξι(ν)
-----	---------	---------

- The -κτσ- in the original νυκτ-σι(ν) ends up as xi, just as the -κσ- in the original φυλακ-σι(ν) does. Similarly, the -ντσ- in the original γιγαντ-σι(ν) ends up as sigma, just as the -τσ- in the original σωματ-σι(ν) does. Simply trying to pronounce the stem plus the dative plural ending will often help you work out the contracted form.
- Third declension nouns, like any others, must of course agree with the article and with adjectives in number, gender, and case.

Exercise 5.2

Translate into English:

- 1 οἱ ἀνδρεῖοι φύλακες τὸν ποταμὸν ἐφύλασσον.
- 2 διώκετε τὸν γίγαντα, ὦ ναῦται.
- 3 ἐμάθομεν τὰ τῶν θεῶν ὀνόματα.
- 4 ὁ γέρων ὁ σοφὸς ἐδίδαξε τοὺς νεανίας.
- 5 φόβον τῆς νυκτὸς οὐκ ἔχομεν.
- 6 ὁ φύλαξ πρὸς τὴν θάλασσαν προσέδραμεν.
- 7 δυο νύκτας ἐν κινδυνῷ ἦμεν.
- 8 ἐκέλευσα τὸν δούλον δεῖπνον τοῖς γέροισι παρέχειν.
- 9 τὸ τοῦ γίγαντος σῶμα μέγιστον ἦν.
- 10 ὁ ποιητὴς τοὺς τῶν γερόντων λόγους ἀκούει.

REVISION CHECKPOINT

Make sure you know

- how the third declension works
- use of the stem
- neuter variants
- adjustments in the dative plural

Background: Homer and the *Odyssey*

As we saw in Chapter One, Homer probably lived in the eighth century BC, just after the Greek alphabet had been introduced. Drawing on a vast stock of stories that had been transmitted orally for perhaps 400 years, he was enabled – and no doubt inspired – by the newly available medium of writing to compose epics (long poems recounting heroic deeds) of a length and complexity unknown before.

The *Iliad* deals with part of the final year of the ten-year war fought by the Greeks against Troy. According to the story, the purpose was to win back Helen, wife of the Greek Menelaus (whose brother Agamemnon led the expedition). Helen had been seized by the Trojan prince Paris (after Aphrodite had promised him the most beautiful woman in the world, and by that bribe beaten Hera and Athene in a beauty contest judged by him). This is of course the stuff of myth. There may well have been a real Trojan War, but its cause is likely to have been access to the Black Sea for trade. (Troy was crucially sited on the route, and in a position to tax passing ships; and the multiple destructions of the city revealed by archaeology suggest it was unpopular.) Homer is not an historian, but he is a supreme storyteller. He deliberately limits himself to one part of the story, for concentrated effect; but he manages to give us a sense of the whole war.

Many stories also dealt with the homecomings of the victorious Greeks. Again Homer concentrates: Odysseus is made representative not only of his comrades, but in a sense also of everyone in their journey through life. (It cannot be proved that both epics are by the same author, but the *Odyssey* has many features in common with the *Iliad*, and certainly was written to follow it, assuming the audience's knowledge of it.) Much of the *Odyssey* consists of a flashback. Odysseus is near the end of adventures that lasted almost as long as the war itself. Just before his return to his home island of Ithaca, he is being entertained by the hospitable Phaeacians, at whose court he recounts his earlier experiences. This device enables Homer to use the supernatural with more freedom, because we can always take refuge in the conclusion that the stories have been improved in the telling. The adventures of Odysseus and his men in the cave of the Cyclops form one of the most famous episodes in the *Odyssey*. Some 250 versions of this story (or uncannily similar stories of independent origin) have been found in different parts of the world.

Exercise 5.3

The Cyclops (1)

- ὁ πόλεμος μακρός ἦν, ἀλλὰ μετὰ δέκα ἐνιαυτούς οἱ Ἀχαιοὶ τὴν Τροίαν ἔλαβον. μετὰ δὲ τὸν πόλεμον ὁ τ'* Ὀδυσσεύς καὶ οἱ ἐταῖροι πολλὰς ἡμέρας ἐν τοῖς πλοίοις ἔπλεον. ἐν δὲ τῇ ὁδῷ κακὰ ἔπαθον· πολλάκις γὰρ εἰς κινδύνους ἐπιπτον. οἱ μὲν θεοὶ πολλάκις τοὺς κινδύνους ἔπεμπον.
- 5 ὁ δ' Ὀδυσσεὺς αὐτός τοὺς ἐταίρους εἰς μέγιστον κίνδυνόν ποτε ἤγαγεν. ἦν νῆσος καλὴ καὶ ἐοήμη. δένδρα καλὰ ἐν τῇ νήσῳ ἦν, ἀλλ'* οὔτ'* οἰκίαι οὔθ'* ἱερὰ οὔτ'* ἀνθρώποι. ἀντί τῆς νήσου ἦν ἡ χώρα ἡ τῶν Κυκλώπων.

* the final vowel is often *elided* (i.e. cut off) when the next word starts with a vowel: see below

	μακρός -ά -όν	long
	μετὰ	(+ <i>acc</i>) after
	δέκα	ten
	ἐνιαυτός -οῦ ὁ	year
I	Ἀχαιοί -ων οἱ	Greeks
	Τροία -ας ἡ	Troy
	τ'	= τε (<i>elided</i>)
	Ὀδυσσεύς ὁ	Odysseus
	ἐταῖρος -ου ὁ	companion
2	πολλοί -αί -ά	many
	πλέω	I sail
	δ'	= δε (<i>elided</i>)
	αὐτός	himself
	ποτε	once
6	ἐρήμος -η -ον	deserted
	ἀλλ'	= ἀλλά (<i>elided</i>)
	οὔτε . . . οὔτε . . . οὔτε	neither . . . nor . . . nor
	(here <i>elided each time</i> as οὔτ'* or οὔθ')	
	ἀντί	opposite, facing (+ <i>gen</i>)
8	Κύκλωψ -ωπος ὁ	Cyclops, <i>pl</i> Cyclopes

ELISION

Elision (= *cutting off*) often occurs when a word ending with a vowel (typically a short vowel) comes before another word starting with a vowel. We saw several examples in the passage above: ἀλλ' οὔτ' for ἀλλα οὔτε. An apostrophe marks the place where the vowel is elided. If the next word has a rough breathing, tau left ending the elided word changes to theta (οὔθ' ἱερὰ), and similarly pi to phi: the *aspiration* ('breathed-on' quality) of the rough breathing spreads to the consonant. Elision simply reflects what would have happened in speech. It is usually easy to

work out what letter has been elided. There are some restrictions on when elision can happen (and Greek authors themselves vary in how widely they use it), but it is frequently seen with words such as conjunctions and prepositions. In this book common examples of elision are included in passages, but some combinations of words where elision could have occurred are left unelided for clarity.

Exercise 5.4

The Cyclops (2)

ὁ Ὀδυσσεύς, διότι ἤθελε περὶ τῶν Κυκλώπων μανθάνειν, πολλοὺς των ἐταίρων ἐν τῇ νήσῳ ἔλιπεν. ἔπειτα δ' ολίγους ἐν πλοίῳ ἤγαγε καὶ πρὸς τὴν τῶν γιγάντων χώραν προσηλθεν. ἄντρον ἦν εγγυς τῆς θαλάσσης. τὸ ἄντρον οἰκία τοῦ Κύκλωπος τοῦ μεγίστου ἦν. ὁ γίγας πολλὰ μῆλα
 5 εἶχεν. τὸ τοῦ γίγαντος ὄνομα ἦν Πολύφημος. ὁ Πολύφημος ἑτερόφθαλμος ἦν. εἰς ὀφθαλμός, κύκλος μέγιστος, ἐν μέσῳ τῷ προσώπῳ ἦν. ὁ Κύκλωψ ἀνθρώπους ἥσθιεν.

ὁ τ' Ὀδυσσεύς καὶ οἱ ἐταῖροι τὸ πλοῖον ἐν τῇ ἄκτῃ ἔλιπον καὶ πρὸς τὸ ἄντρον προσηλθον. τὸ ἄντρον κενόν ἦν. ὁ γὰρ Κύκλωψ ἄπῃν. τὰ γὰρ
 10 μῆλα ἐν τοῖς ἀγροῖς ἐνεμεν. ὁ δ' Ὀδυσσεύς καὶ οἱ ἐταῖροι ἐν τῷ ἄντρῳ ἐθαυμασαν. τὸ ἄντρον θησαυρὸς τυροῦ ἦν. οἱ μὲν ἐταῖροι τυρὸν

	περὶ	about (+ <i>gen</i>)
	πολλοί -αί -ά	many
	ἐταῖρος -ου ὁ	companion
	δ'	= δέ (<i>elided</i>)
2	ολίγοι -αι -α	few
	προσηλθον (<i>irregular second [strong] aorist</i>)	I went towards, I approached
	ἄντρον -ου τό	cave
	εγγύς	near (+ <i>gen</i>)
4	μῆλα -ων τά	sheep
	Πολύφημος -ου ὁ	Polyphemus
	ἑτερόφθαλμος	one-eyed
	εἰς	one
	κύκλος -ου ὁ	circle
6	μέσος -η -ον	middle (part) of
	πρόσωπον -ου τό	forehead
	τ'	= τε (<i>elided</i>)
	ἄκτῃ -ῆς ἡ	shore
	κενός -ῃ -όν	empty
9	ἄπειμι <i>imperfect</i> ἀπῇν	I am away
	ἀγρός -οῦ ὁ	field
	νέμω	I pasture
	θησαυρός -οῦ ὁ	treasure-house
	τύρος -οῦ ὁ	cheese

λαμβάνειν καὶ ἀποτρέχειν ἤθελον· ὁ δ' Ὀδυσσεὺς ἤθελεν εὐρίσκειν καὶ γινώσκειν τὸν Πολύφημον.

μετὰ ὀλίγας ὥρας ὁ Κύκλωψ παρῆν. τὰ μήλα ἤγε καὶ ξύλον εφερεν.

- 15 ἡ τοῦ ἄντρου θύρα ἦν λίθος μεγιστος. ὁ Κύκλωψ μόνος οἷος τ' ἦν κυλίνδειν τὸν λίθον. ἡ θύρα κλειστή ἦν. ὁ Κύκλωψ πῦρ ἔκαυσε καὶ εἶδε τοὺς ἀνθρώπους. βοή μεγίστη ἦν. "τινες ἐστέ, ὦ ξένοι, καὶ πόθεν;" "Ἀχαιοί ἐσμεν καὶ ἀπὸ τῆς Τροίας πλεομεν," εἶπεν ὁ Ὀδυσσεὺς, "δῶρα ἐθέλομεν ἔχειν. ὁ γὰρ Ζεὺς ξένους αἰεὶ φυλάσσει." "μῶρος εἰ, ὦ ἀνθρωπε," 20 εἶπεν ὁ Κύκλωψ, "οἱ γὰρ Κύκλωπες φόβον τῶν θεῶν οὐκ ἐχουσιν." ἐπεὶ δ' ἔλαβε δύο τῶν ἐταίρων καὶ δεῖπνον εσχεν. μετὰ τὸ δεῖπνον εἰς ὑπνον βαθύτατον ἔπεσεν. ὁ Ὀδυσσεὺς ἤθελεν ἀποκτείνειν τὸν Πολύφημον, ἀλλ' οἱ ἀνθρώποι οὐχ οἷοί τ' ἦσαν κυλίνδειν τὸν λίθον καὶ φεύγειν. ἡ νύξ μακρά ἦν. ἐπεὶ μέντοι ἡμερὰ ἦν ὁ Πολύφημος τὰ μήλα ἐξήγαγε, καὶ ὁ 25 Ὀδυσσεὺς νέαν βουλὴν ελαβεν. ἐν τῷ ἀντρῷ ρόπαλον μέγιστον ἤρρον. ᾧξυναν τῇ ρόπαλον καὶ ἐν τῷ πυρὶ ἐλιπον ᾧστε σκληρόν ἦν. ἐπεὶ δ' ἔμενον τὸν Πολύφημον.

	μετὰ	(+ acc) after
	<u>ὀλίγοι-αι-α</u>	few
	πάρεμι <i>imperfect</i> παρῆν	I am here, I am present
	μήλα -ων τὰ	sheep
14	ξύλον -ου τό	wood
	άντρον -ου τό	cave
	λίθος -ου ὁ	stone
	μόνος -η -ον	alone, only
	οἷος τ' εἰμί*	I am able
16	κυλίνδω	I roll
	κλειστός -ή -όν	closed, shut
	πῦρ πυρός τό	fire
	καίω <i>aorist</i> ἔκαυσα	I kindle
16	εἶδον (<i>irregular second [strong]</i> <i>aorist</i>)	I saw
	τίνες;	who? (pl)
	πόθεν;	where from?
	Ἀχαιοί -ων οἱ	Greeks
	Τροία -ας ἡ	Troy
18	πλέω	I sail
	μῶρος -α -ον	foolish
	ἐταῖρος -ου ὁ	companion
	ὑπνος -ου ὁ	sleep
	βαθύτατος -η -ον	very deep
24	μακρός -ά -όν	long
	ρόπαλον -ου τό	club
	ὀξύνα ᾧξυνα	I sharpen
	ᾧστε	with the result that
	σκληρός -ά -όν	hard

* note this common expression for *I am able*: the adjective οἷος (literally *of the sort to . . .*) with τε (elided) and the verb *to be*, both adjective and verb changing their endings as appropriate

THE USES OF τίς/τις

- In the last passage you met:

τίνες ἐστέ; who are you (*pl*)?

And in the story about the Locrians in Chapter Three you met:

τις someone
Λοκρός τις a (certain) Locrian

These are parts of τις, an important pronoun/adjective (third declension in form) with a range of uses.

- In a question, and with an acute accent on the first (or only) syllable, it means

who? what? which?

This is the *interrogative* use (asking a question):

		<i>masculine/feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	τίς	τι	who? which? what?
	<i>acc</i>	τὶν-α	τι	
	<i>gen</i>	τὶν-ός	τὶν-ός	
	<i>dat</i>	τὶν-ι	τὶν-ι	
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	τίν-ες	τὶν-α	
	<i>acc</i>	τὶν-ας	τὶν-α	
	<i>gen</i>	τὶν-ων	τὶν-ων	
	<i>dat</i>	τίσι(ν)*	τίσι(ν)*	

* contracted from τὶν-σι(ν) to aid pronunciation

- Elsewhere, usually without an accent or with an accent on the second syllable, it means

a (certain), some (one/thing)

This is the *indefinite* use:

		<i>masculine/feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	τις	τι	a (certain), some (one/thing)
	<i>acc</i>	τὶν-α	τι	
	<i>gen</i>	τὶν-ός	τὶν-ός	
	<i>dat</i>	τὶν-ι	τὶν-ι	

<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	τιν-ές	τιν-ά
	<i>acc</i>	τιν-άς	τιν-ά
	<i>gen</i>	τιν-ών	τιν-ών
	<i>dat</i>	τισί(ν)*	τισί(ν)*

* contracted from τιν-σι(ν) to aid pronunciation

- The form is regular third declension, with genitive stem τιν-; as often when a word has a neuter form, its nominative is a shortened form of the masculine. And as with all neuters, nominative and accusative are the same, and nominative and accusative plural end in alpha.
- The uses of τίς/τις provide one of the most obvious examples in Greek of an accent making a difference to the meaning of a word. Although (as we saw at the beginning of this chapter) it is not normally necessary to use accents when you write Greek, τίς/τις is an exception: the interrogative version should always be given its accent. Greek texts and passages are usually printed with accents, but even when they are not, an exception is made for this word.
- In both the interrogative and indefinite uses, τίς/τις can be used either as an adjective (with a noun) or as a pronoun (standing alone).
- The word order is very important. The interrogative version normally comes first in its clause. The indefinite version never comes first, and when used as an adjective must follow its noun.

As noted above, the interrogative version *always* has an accent in the first/only syllable; the indefinite version usually has no accent, or an accent on the second syllable. Occasionally the single-syllable parts of the indefinite τις *acquire* an accent from a following word, but in these rare cases confusion with the interrogative is avoided by word order and context.

- The four main uses therefore are:

τίς δοῦλος ἀποτρέχει; *interrogative adjective*
Which slave is running away?

τίς ἀποτρέχει; *interrogative pronoun*
Who is running away?

δουλός τις ἀποτρέχει. *indefinite adjective*
A (certain) slave is running away.

ἀποτρέχει τις. *indefinite pronoun*
Someone is running away.

- The indefinite adjective version is sometimes called the *indefinite article*, though as we have seen Greek commonly has the noun alone (e.g. δοῦλος) for *a slave*, keeping δουλός τις for a slightly more emphatic *a certain slave*, or to imply a contrast with *the slave*.

- If the indefinite adjective version is used with a noun that has an adjective as well, it normally comes between the noun and the adjective: e.g. νόμος τις νέος = *a certain new law*.
- Whilst the interrogative version naturally occurs in a question, it is of course possible for the indefinite version to be used *within* a question (which will usually have a *different* interrogative word, e.g. ἀρα; or ποῦ;).
- When the interrogative version is a pronoun, there is a clear distinction in English between *who?* for a person and *what?* for a thing. When it is an adjective, the English is usually *which* . . . ? for either (and of course the gender in Greek is, as with any adjective, determined by the gender of the noun).

Exercise 5.5

Translate into English:

- 1 τις ἤκουσε τὰς βοάς;
- 2 τίνες στρατιῶται ἐδιώξαν τον ἵππον;
- 3 βουλὴν τινα σοφὴν ἔχω.
- 4 τί λέγει ὁ θεός;
- 5 τινι τῶν γερόντων δειπνον παρέσχες, ὦ δοῦλε;
- 6 ἀρα ἐθέλετε μῦθόν τινα ἀκούειν;
- 7 πολῖταί τινες ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ ἦσαν.
- 8 “τί ἐστι τὸ τοῦ γίγαντος ὄνομα;” εἶπεν ὁ διδάσκαλος.
- 9 ἔστι* δοῦλος τις ἐν τῷ ἱερῷ.
- 10 τί τῶν δώρων μέγιστον ἦν;

* remember that if the verb *to be* starts the sentence it is usually translated *there is* etc: because it introduces something not mentioned before, it goes naturally with the indefinite τις

Exercise 5.6

Translate into Greek:

- 1 Who sent the letter?
- 2 Which horses ran away?
- 3 A certain village has a new temple.
- 4 What did the soldier take?
- 5 Something fell from the boat.



- Some more third declension nouns:

ἄγων -ῶνος	ὁ	contest
ἄρχων -οντος	ὁ	ruler, magistrate
λιμὴν -ενος	ὁ	harbour
παῖς παιδός	ὁ/ή	boy, girl, child
πούς ποδός	ὁ	foot

- Notice that some words, such as παῖς here, are *common gender*: i.e. they can be either masculine or feminine.
- Notice again the importance of the genitive stem, and the fact that English derivatives are often formed from it.
- Notice that if the nominative ends -ων, the genitive most commonly ends -οντος (like γέγων), but some nouns have variants: e.g. -ωνος.
- As usual, slight adjustment is necessary with the dative plural to aid pronunciation. The dative plurals of these nouns are:

ἁγῶσι(ν)	for	-ωνσι(ν)
ἀρχουσι(ν)		-οντσι(ν)
λιμέσι(ν)		-ενσι(ν)
παισί(ν)		-δσι(ν)
ποσί(ν)		-δσι(ν)

It is not necessary however to learn them individually: just observe the patterns and you will usually be able to predict them.

Exercise 5.7

Give one English derivative from:

- 1 ἁγών -ῶνος
- 2 παῖς παιδός
- 3 πούς ποδός
- 4 ὄνομα -ατος
- 5 σῶμα -ατος

Exercise 5.8

Translate into English:

- 1 οἱ παῖδες ἐν τοῖς ἀγῶσιν εἵρετον.
- 2 τις ἐστὶν ὁ τῆς κώμης ἄρχων;
- 3 ἡ παῖς τὸν παῖδα διώκει.
- 4 τὰ πλοῖα ἐν τῷ λιμένι ἦν.
- 5 οἱ στρατιῶται ἔμαθον τὴν τοῦ ἀρχοντος βουλὴν.
- 6 φόβος τις ἐκώλυσε τὸν παῖδα.
- 7 τίνα νῆσον ἐφυλάσσετε, ὦ στρατιῶται;
- 8 ὁ γίγας πόδας μεγίστους ἔχει.
- 9 ὁ ποιητὴς τοὺς παῖδας ἐδίδαξεν.
- 10 τί ἤκουσας ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ;

Exercise 5.9

Translate into Greek:

- 1 There was a certain sea-battle in the harbour.
- 2 The ruler of the island is an old man.
- 3 The girls were learning certain stories.
- 4 What is the name of the giant?
- 5 The horse has fine feet.



Exercise 5.10



Figure 5.1 Vase from an Etruscan tomb depicting Odysseus and his companions as they blind Polyphemus. (Photo by CM Dixon/Print Collector/Getty Images.)

The Cyclops (3)

νύξ ἦν. ὁ τ' Ὀδυσσεὺς καὶ οἱ ἐταῖροι ἐν τῷ ἄντρῳ ἔμενον. ὁ Πολύφημος μετὰ τῶν μήλων πρὸς τὸ ἄντρον προσέβαινε. οἱ ἄνθρωποι τὸν Κύκλωπα εἶδον. ἐπεὶ ἐν τῷ ἄντρῳ παρῆν, ἐτοιμοί ἦσαν. ὁ Ὀδυσσεὺς τὸ ρόπαλον εἶχεν. ἡ τοῦ ἄντρον θύρα νυν κλειστή ἦν. ὁ Κύκλωψ αὖθις ἔλαβε δύο τῶν ἐταίρων καὶ εφαγεν. ὁ δ' Ὀδυσσεὺς οἶνον τινα κάλλιστον ἐν τῷ

ἐταῖρος -ου ο	companion
ἄντρον -ου τό	cave
μετὰ	(+ <i>gen</i>) with (+ <i>acc</i> = after)
μήλα -ων τά	sheep
3 εἶδον (<i>irregular second [strong] aorist</i>)	I saw
παρεῖμι <i>imperfect</i> παρῆν	I am present, I arrive
ἐτοιμος -η -ον	ready
ρόπαλον -ου τό	club
4 κλειστός -ή -όν	closed, shut
αὖθις	again
ἐσθίω εφαγον	I eat
οἶνος -ου ὁ	wine
κάλλιστος -η -ον	very fine, excellent

- πλοία ἐκόμιζε, δῶρον ξένου τινός· νυν ἐν ἄσκῳ ἔφερε, καὶ τῷ Κύκλωπι εἶπεν, “οἶνον λάμβανε, καὶ μετὰ τὸ δεῖπνον πίνε, οἶνον γὰρ κάλλιστον ἐν τῷ πλοίῳ φέρομεν.” ὁ οὖν Πολύφημος τον οἶνον ελαβε καὶ ἐπιεν. ἔπειτα δ’ εἶπε, “κάλλιστος ὁ οἶνος, ὧ ξένε· αὐθις πάρεχε. ἀλλὰ τί ἐστι τὸ σὸν 10 ὄνομα; δῶρον γὰρ ἐθέλω παρέχειν.” ὁ οὖν Ὀδυσσεὺς οἶνον αὐθις παρέσχε καὶ εἶπε, “τὸ ὄνομα τὸ ἐμὸν Οὐτίς ἐστίν,” “Οὐτὶν οὖν ὔστατον ἔδομαι,” εἶπεν ὁ Πολύφημος, “τοὺς ἄλλους πρότερον· οὕτως γὰρ δῶρον παρεχω.”
- ὁ δὲ Κύκλωψ νῦν ἐμέθυε, καὶ ὁ ὀφθαλμὸς κλειστός ἦν· ὑπνος γὰρ ἔλαβε 15 τον Πολύφημον. ὁ οὖν Ὀδυσσεὺς τὸ ρόπαλον πρὸς τὸ πῦρ αὐθις ἔφερεν. ἔπειτα δὲ μετὰ των εταίρων ἐνέβαλεν εἰς τὸν τοῦ Κυκλωπος ὀφθαλμόν. μεγίστη βοή ἦν. οἱ ἄλλοι Κύκλωπες πρὸς τὸ ἄντρον ἐδραμον. “τί ἐστίν, ὦ Πολύφημε;” εἶπον οἱ Κύκλωπες, “τίς ἐστὶν ὁ κίνδυνος; τίς βλάπτει σε,” “Οὐτίς βλάπτει με, Οὐτίς ἐθέλει ἀποκτείνειν,” εἶπεν ὁ Πολύφημος.
- 20 “κίνδυνος οὖν οὐκ ἐστίν, ἐπεὶ οὐτίς βλάπτει, οὐτίς ἐθέλει ἀποκτείνειν σε. νόσον γὰρ τινα ἀπὸ τῶν θεῶν ἔχεις,” εἶπον οἱ Κύκλωπες, καὶ ἀπέβαινον.

	κομίζω	I bring
	ἄσκός -ου ὁ	wine-skin
	πίνω ἐπιον	I drink
9	σός ση σόν	your (of you sg) (<i>used with the article, though this is not translated</i>)
	ἐμός -ῆ -όν	my (<i>used similarly with the article</i>)
	Οὔτις (<i>accusative</i> Οὐτὶν)	Noman (<i>invented name</i> : οὐτις = no-one)
	ὔστατον	last
12	ἔδομαι (<i>irregular future</i>)	I shall eat
	ἄλλος -ῆ -ο	other
	οὕτως	in this way
	μεθύω	I am drunk
	ὀφθαλμός -ου ὁ	eye
14	κλειστός -ῆ -όν	closed, shut
	ὑπνος -ου ὁ	sleep
	ρόπαλον -ου τό	club
	πῦρ πυρός τό	fire
	αὐθις	again
16	μετά	(+ <i>gen</i>) with
	εταῖρος -ου ὁ	companion
	εμβάλλω ἐνέβαλον	I thrust in
	ἄλλος -ῆ -ο	other
	βλάπτω	I harm
18	σε	you (<i>acc sg</i>)

- ὁ δὲ Πολύφημος νῦν τυφλὸς ἦν, ἀλλ' ἔτι οἶός τ' ἦν κυλίνδειν τον λίθον.
 ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡμερὰ ἦν ὁ Κύκλωψ ἐξήγαγε τὰ μῆλα. ὑπὸ ἐκάστῳ ἦν εἷς τῶν
 ἐταίρων. καὶ ὁ μέγιστος κοῖος τῶν Ὀδυσσέα εφερεν. οὕτως οὖν ἐκ τοῦ
 25 ἄντρου ἔφυγον καὶ πρὸς τὴν θάλασσαν ἐδραμον. ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ μῆλα εἰς τὸ
 πλοῖον ἤγαγον καὶ τὸ πλοῖον ἐλυσαν. ὁ δ' Ὀδυσσεὺς ὕβρισε τον
 Πολύφημον· “ἄρα ἐθέλεις γινώσκειν τις σε ὕβρισε καὶ τὰ μῆλα ἐκλεψεν;
 οὐ γὰρ Οὐτίς εἰμι ἐγὼ ἀλλ' Ὀδυσσεὺς ὁ πολύτροπος.”

	τυφλός -ή -όν	blind
	ἐτι	still
	οἶός τ' εἰμί	I am able
	κυλίνδω	I roll
23	ὑπό	(+ dat) under
	ἐκαστος -η -ον	each
	εἷς	one
	κρίως -οῦ ὁ	ram
	οὕτως	in this way
25	ἄντρον -ου τό	cave
	μῆλα -ων τά	sheep
	ὕβριζω ὕβρισα	I insult
	κλέπτω ἐκλεψα	I steal
	ἐγώ	I
28	πολύτροπος	of many wiles, full of tricks (<i>recurrent Homeric adjective describing Odysseus</i>)

CASES TAKEN BY PREPOSITIONS

In Chapter One we met these prepositions that are followed by the accusative case, indicating *motion towards*:

εἰς	into
πρὸς	towards

In Chapter Three we met these prepositions that are followed by the genitive case, indicating *motion away from*:

ἀπό	from
ἐκ (ἐξ)	out of

and this preposition that is followed by the dative case, indicating *rest*:

ἐν	in
----	----

- This pattern of case usage applies to most prepositions. Some however can take more than one case; the thought process determining the case is not always as obvious as in the examples above; and some uses of prepositions have special idiomatic meanings that cannot easily be

guessed. But as always the common examples quickly become familiar. In Chapter Four we met:

μετά + *accusative* after

In this chapter we have met:

μετά + *genitive* with

Another preposition taking both accusative and genitive is:

διὰ + <i>accusative</i>	on account of*
διὰ + <i>genitive</i>	through

* note however that the translation ‘through’ would often also be appropriate here, e.g. *She was absent through illness*; contrast *She was walking through the field* (physically through), which would need the genitive

- Note the very common phrase:

διὰ τί; why? (*literally* on account of what?)

- Where a preposition takes only one case, it is given in wordlists in this book in the form:

από from (+ *gen*)

but if the case is given *before* the meaning, that is a signal that the preposition has one or more other meanings with one or more different cases:

μετά (+ *gen*) with

Exercise 5.11

Translate into English:

- 1 διὰ τί αἱ παῖδες ἐκ τῆς οἰκίας ἐξεδραμον;
- 2 οἱ στρατιῶται ἐνθάδε μετὰ τῶν συμμάχων μένουσιν.
- 3 ὁ ἵππος διὰ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἔτρεχεν.
- 4 μετὰ τὸ δεῖπνον οἱ πολῖται εἰς τὴν ἀγορὰν ἐκβαίνουσιν.
- 5 διὰ τὴν νόσον ὁ γέρον οὐ πάρεστιν.

πάρεμι = *I am here, I am present* is a compound of εἰμί and has the same endings

Exercise 5.12



Translate into Greek:

- 1 After the contest we found a very big prize.
- 2 The slave was running through the market-place towards the sea.
- 3 What did the old man leave in the house?
- 4 On account of the war we do not have wine.
- 5 Why were the magistrates not suffering with the citizens?

PERSONAL PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES (First and Second Person Singular)

- We met some of these in the last passage. The first person singular pronoun (*I, me*, etc: note that this is one of the places where English has nominative and accusative) in full is:

<i>nom</i>	εγώ	I
<i>acc</i>	ἐμέ or με	me
<i>gen</i>	ἐμοῦ or μου	of me
<i>dat</i>	ἐμοί or μοι	to/for me

- The accusative, genitive and dative are found both with and without the initial epsilon. The version with the epsilon is used in slightly more emphatic positions (e.g. first word in a sentence); the version without the epsilon is used when the pronoun is felt to follow another word closely (e.g. πίστευε μοι = *believe me!*). A word closely following and depending on another in this way is known technically as an *enclitic* (= *leaning on*). Enclitics usually do not have an accent. The indefinite τις is commonly used as an enclitic.
- Note similarity to the Latin equivalent (*ego, me*, etc). As in Latin, the nominative is only used for emphasis or to draw a contrast, because the first person singular of a verb is normally sufficient to indicate the subject.
- The associated adjective is:

ἐμός -ή -όν (*my*)

This goes exactly like σοφός. Its gender is that of the thing possessed (not the possessor). It behaves like any other adjective, i.e. when used with a noun normally has the article as well (not translated in English), and is either sandwiched or has repeated article for the *bound* or *attributive* position (telling you *which one*):

ἡ ἐμὴ οἰκία or
ἡ οἰκία ἡ ἐμὴ
my house

- The second person singular pronoun (*you* sg) is:

<i>nom</i>	σύ	you (sg)
<i>acc</i>	σε	
<i>gen</i>	σου	of you
<i>dat</i>	σοί	to/for you

- Again the nominative is normally only used for emphasis.
- The other cases are often used as enclitics (closely following and depending on another word): they then usually lose their accent (but, unlike the equivalent parts of the first person pronoun, do not otherwise have a special form for the enclitic use).
- The associated adjective here is: *σος, σι, σον* (*your, of you* sg)

This declines and is used in the same way as the first person adjective.

Exercise 5.13

Translate into English:

- 1 ἐγὼ μὲν ἔμεινα, σὺ δὲ ἔφυγες.
- 2 δεῖπνόν μοι πάρεχε, ὦ δοῦλε.
- 3 ἐμὲ θαυμάζουσιν οἱ πολῖται.
- 4 ἄρα γινώσκεις τὸ ἐμὸν ὄνομα;
- 5 αἱ σαὶ ἐπιστολαὶ ἐπειθόν με.
- 6 ὁ ἐμὸς ἵππος κάλλιστος.
- 7 οὐκ ἔθελω μετὰ σου εἰς κίνδυνον βαίνειν.
- 8 ὁ γίγας δῶκει τὸν πλοῖον.
- 9 σὺ μὲν ἄρχων εἰ τοῦ δήμου, ἐγὼ δὲ οὐ.
- 10 τὸ ἔργον τὸ τῶν ἐμῶν δούλων χαλεπὸν ἐστίν.

Exercise 5.14

Translate into Greek:

- 1 I admire your prizes.
- 2 My house has a small door.
- 3 Who chased your horse, old man?
- 4 I am a slave, but you are free.
- 5 *You* did not trust my friends.

SMC

Exercise 5.15

The Cyclops (4)

Odysseus tells the next part of the story:

- “ὁ δὲ Πολύφημος, ἐπεὶ τοὺς ἐμοὺς λόγους ἤκουσε, πολλοὺς λίθους
εβαλλεν (ὕβριστικῶς γὰρ εἶπον), ἀλλ’ οὐχ οἷός τ’ ἦν τὸ ἐμὸν πλοῖον
καταδύειν. ἐφυγον οὖν μετὰ ολίγων ἑταίρων ἀπὸ τῆς τοῦ Κύκλωπος
 5 χώρας. καὶ πρὸς τὴν τῶν αἰγῶν νῆσον ταχέως ἦλθομεν. ἐκεῖ γὰρ οἱ ἄλλοι
 εταῖροι ἐμενον. τὰ δὲ μῆλα ἐκ τοῦ πλοίου ἐλάβομεν. ἐπειτα δὲ τὰ κρέα
 τοῖς ναύταις ἐνείμαμεν. ἐγὼ δὲ τῷ Διὶ ἔθυσα τὸν μέγιστον κρίον. ὁ μεντοὶ
 Ζεὺς οὐκ ἤκουσε τὴν ἐμὴν εὐχήν. ὁ γὰρ Ποσειδῶν (ὁ τῆς θαλάσσης
 θεός, ὁ τοῦ Πολυφήμου πατήρ καὶ ὁ τοῦ Διὸς ἀδελφός) περιοργῆς ἦν, καὶ οἱ
 θεοὶ ἤθελον τὰ πλοῖα διαφθείρειν καὶ τοὺς ἑταίρους ἀποκτείνειν. ἀλλὰ
 10 τὴν νῆσον ἐλίπομεν, χαίροντες διότι ἐκ θανάτου νῦν ἐφύγομεν.”

	πολλοί-αί-ά	many
	λίθος-ου ὁ	stone
	ὕβριστικῶς	arrogantly
	οἷός τ’ εἰμί	I am able
3	καταδύω	I sink (something)
	ολίγοι-αι-α	few
	ἑταῖρος-ου ὁ	companion
	αἶξ αἰγός ὁ	goat
	ταχέως	quickly
4	ἦλθον (<i>irregular second[strong] aorist</i>)	I came
	μῆλα-ων τά	sheep
	κρέα-ων τά	meat
	νέμω ἐνείμα	I distribute
6	Ζεὺς (<i>irregular genitive</i> Διός) ὁ	Zeus
	θύω ἔθυσα	I sacrifice
	κρίος-ου ὁ	ram
	εὐχή-ῆς ἡ	prayer
	Ποσειδῶν-ῶνος ὁ	Poseidon
8	πατήρ-τρός ὁ	father
	ἀδελφός-ου ὁ	brother
	περιοργῆς	very angry
	διαφθείρω	I destroy
	χαίροντες*	rejoicing

* this is the *present participle* of χαίρω = *I rejoice*: see the next page

PRESENT PARTICIPLE (1)

- A participle is a part of a verb used (normally) as an adjective, formed by putting noun/adjective endings onto a verb stem. Greek makes very full use of participles, and often avoids longer and more complex clauses by doing so.
- The present active participle is literally translated *-ing*. This however needs care in English: *they fell about laughing* and *the laughing cavalier* involve participles (equivalent to *while laughing*, *who is laughing*, etc); but *laughing is good for you* is a different idiom (equivalent to a noun *laughter* or *the act of laughing*): this is not a participle. (In Greek it would be an infinitive, as we shall see later.)
- The present active participle in the masculine declines exactly like a third declension noun such as γέρον:

<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	παύ-ων	stopping
	<i>acc</i>	παύ-οντα	
	<i>gen</i>	παύ-οντος	
	<i>dat</i>	παύ-οντι	
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	παύ-οντες	
	<i>acc</i>	παύ-οντας	
	<i>gen</i>	παυ-όντων	
	<i>dat</i>	παύ-ουσι(ν)*	

* as will be familiar by now, this is a contraction of παυ-οντσι(ν)

- This is broadly comparable to a Latin present participle (e.g. *portans*, *portantis*) which is likewise third declension (similar to the adjective *ingens*).
- The present participle does not tell you that the action is necessarily happening *now*, but rather *at the same time as* the action expressed by the main verb. If the main verb is past (as it commonly is in narrative), the present participle refers to something also happening in the past (and so may be translated like an imperfect tense).
- As we saw in the English examples above (*fell about laughing*, *laughing cavalier*) the participle often replaces a clause: a *when* or *while* clause (*temporal*, telling you when), or a *who* clause (*relative*, describing further, or specifying which one).

Examples:

τρέχων έπεσον

literally *running*, *I fell* or (in better English, and because the main verb is past) *while I was running*, *I fell*;

διδάσκοντες μανθάνομεν

literally *teaching, we learn* or (in better English, this time with present main verb)
while we are teaching, we learn;

φεύγοντες ἀπέθανον

literally *escaping, they died* or *when they were escaping, they died*.

- When the participle is used with a noun, the word order and use of the article make an important difference to the meaning. Consider the difference between:

1: The slave, while he was escaping, fell.

where we are being given information about the *circumstances* of the person under discussion: this in Greek is

ὁ δοῦλος φεύγων ἔπεσεν.

2: The slave who was escaping fell.

or The escaping slave fell (which may imply e.g. *but the other slave didn't*): we are being told an *attribute* of the slave in question, distinguishing him from others. This in Greek is

ὁ δοῦλος ὁ φεύγων ἔπεσεν.

literally

The slave the one escaping fell.

i.e. The escaping slave fell.

or The slave who was escaping fell.

(this is like the normal use of an adjective; we saw above that a participle is an adjective formed from a verb)

- With an ordinary adjective the sandwiched version (ὁ κακός δοῦλος) is the norm, with the repeated article version (ὁ δοῦλος ὁ κακός) available as an alternative. But with the participle, the repeated article version (ὁ δοῦλος ὁ φεύγων) is the norm (with the sandwiched version ὁ φεύγων δοῦλος possible in theory but not normally used).
- To summarise – you need to distinguish two main uses of the participle with a noun:

1: circumstantial (e.g. what someone was doing at the time)

οἱ σύμμαχοι τρέχοντες βοὰς ἤκουσαν.

The allies while running heard shouts.

or The allies when they were running heard shouts.

2: attributive/adjectival (describing the people, perhaps to distinguish them from others)

οι σύμμαχοι οἱ τρέχοντες βοὰς ἤκουσαν.

The allies who were running heard shouts.

(perhaps implying e.g. *but those who were standing still did not*)

This is the normal way Greek expresses what in English or Latin would be a relative clause: indeed a failsafe way of translating a participle after the article is to use a relative clause introduced by *who* or *which*.

- Although a participle may have become an adjective, or be replacing a clause, it remains a verb and so can for example still take an object, or a preposition phrase. This normally (especially with the attributive version) goes in front of the participle:

οἱ παῖδες οἱ τὸν ἵππον διώκοντες ἐθαύμασαν.

The boys who were chasing the horse were amazed.

ὁ στρατιώτης εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον εἰστρέχων ἐπεσεν.

The soldier while running into the camp fell.

or, with better English word order,

The soldier fell while running into the camp.

- As many of these examples have shown, there are often several possible English translations of a participle (*when* . . ., *while* . . ., etc). The important point is that Greek likes to have just one main verb in a sentence: other, subordinate ideas are commonly expressed by participles.

Exercise 5.16

Translate into English:

- 1 ὁ στρατηγὸς τὸν στρατὸν τάσσων βοὴν ἤκουσεν.
- 2 οἱ δούλοι οἱ φεύγοντες εἰσέπεσον εἰς τὴν θάλασσαν.
- 3 τὸν γίγαντα τοῦς ἀνθρώπους ἐσθίοντα ἐλάβομεν.
- 4 ὁ ξενὸς ὁ τὸν ἵππον ἔχων ἔφυγεν.
- 5 κελεύσω τὸν δούλον τὸν λέγοντα ἐνθάδε μένειν.
- 6 οἱ στρατιῶται τὴν κώμην φυλάσσοντες ἀπεθάνον.
- 7 τίνες εἰσὶν οἱ ναῦται οἱ ἐκ τοῦ λιμένος ἐκβαίνοντες;
- 8 πιστεύω τῷ κριτῇ τῷ σοφῶς λέγοντι.
- 9 ἐγὼ ἦρην ἀνθρώπῳ τινα τὸ ἐμὸν δεῖπνον ἐσθίοντα.
- 10 ὁ νεανίας ὁ τὴν χώραν γινώσκων χρησιμὸς σοὶ ἐστίν.

Exercise 5.17



Translate into Greek:

- 1 The soldiers who are running away are not wise.
- 2 While chasing the giant, the young man fell.
- 3 The teacher, while he was writing a letter, heard the shouts.
- 4 The giant died when he was eating the boy.
- 5 Who is the slave who is leading the horses?

- The present participle of the verb *to be* is simply the participle endings (with smooth breathing), so the masculine is:

sg	nom	ων	being
	acc	όντα	
	gen	όντος	
	dat	όντι	
pl	nom	όντες	
	acc	όντας	
	gen	όντων	
	dat	ούσι(ν)	

- With any participle, another possible translation of the circumstantial use is *because*:

ὁ δοῦλος ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ μένων οὐκ ἤκουσε τὰς βοάς.

The slave, because he stayed in the house, did not hear the shouts.

The translation *because* is often particularly appropriate with the participle of *to be*:

e.g. ὁ παῖς ἀνδρείως ὦν οὐκ ἔφυγεν.

literally The boy, being brave, did not run away.

or The boy, because he was brave, did not run away.

However, the translation *who* is also often natural:

ὁ Περικλῆς στρατηγὸς ὦν ἔταξε τὸν στρατόν.

Pericles, who was general, drew up the army.

Exercise 5.18

Translate into English:

- 1 ὁ διδάσκαλος, σοφὸς ὢν, σοφῶς διδάσκει.
- 2 οἱ ξένοι σύμμαχοι ὄντες ἐφύλασσον τὸν λιμένα.
- 3 διὰ τί οἱ ναῦται κακοὶ ὄντες ἐφυγον;
- 4 ὁ Ζεὺς θεὸς ὢν καλὰ δῶρα τοῖς ἀνθρώποις παρέχει.
- 5 οἱ πολῖται οἱ ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ μένοντες ἐθαύμασαν.

Exercise 5.19

Translate into Greek:

- 1 The ruler, because he was wise, wrote good laws.
- 2 The soldiers, being brave, guarded the citizens.
- 3 The boys, because they were bad, did not listen.
- 4 Polyphemus, who was a giant, ate two men.
- 5 Because it was dangerous, the river hindered the army.

Polyphemus	Πολυφημος ο
I hinder	κωλυω, aorist ἐκώλυσα



REVISION CHECKPOINT

Make sure you know:

- first and second person singular pronouns and adjectives
- the declension of the present participle in the masculine, and the main ways it is used

Exercise 5.20**The Bag of Winds**

Figure 5.2 French illustration of Aeolus giving Odysseus the bag of winds. (Photo by Leemage/UIG via Getty Images.)

After leaving the scene of the adventure with the Cyclops, Odysseus and his surviving men came to the floating island of Aeolia, ruled by Aeolus.

“ὁ δ’ Αἰόλος καλῶς ἐξένισεν ἡμᾶς. καὶ ἐπεὶ τὴν νῆσον ἐλείπομεν, δῶρα
 θαυμάσια παρέσχε· τοὺς γὰρ ἄνεμους ἐν ἀσκῷ σκυτίνῳ ἐδέσμευσεν.
 ἐννέα ἡμέρας ἀπὸ τῆς τοῦ Αἰόλου νήσου ἐπλέομεν. τέλος δὲ τὴν Ἰθάκην
 εἶδομεν. ἀλλ’ ὑπνος ἔλαβε με. ἔπειτα δὲ οἱ ἑταῖοι εἶπον, ‘ὁ Ὀδυσσεύς,
 5 ἀνθρώπων πλουσίῳ φίλος ὢν, πολλὰ δῶρα αἰεὶ ἐχει. καὶ ἀπὸ τῆς Τροίας
 θησαυρὸν φέρει. ἡμεῖς δ’ οὐδὲν ἐχομεν. καὶ νυνὶ ὁ Αἰόλος ἄλλο δῶρον
 παρέσχε· ἄρα χουρός ἐν τῷ ἀσκῷ ἐνεστίν;’ τὸν οὖν ἀσκὸν ἐλυσαν. καὶ
 οἱ ἄνεμοι εὐθύς ἐξέφυγον. χειμῶν μέγιστος τὰ πλοῖα ἀπὸ τῆς Ἰθάκης
 πόρῳ ἤνεγκεν. ἐγὼ ἐγοηγοῶς ἀθλιώτατος ἤ. πρὸς οὖν τὴν τοῦ Αἰόλου

	Αἰόλος -ου ὁ	Aeolus
	ξενίζω ἐξένισα	I entertain
	ἡμᾶς	us
	θαυμάσιος -α -ον	amazing, wonderful
2	ἄνεμος -ου ὁ	wind
	ασκός -ου ὁ	bag
	σκύτινος -η -ον	(made of) leather
	δεσμεύω ἐδέσμευσα	I fasten up
	ἐννέα	nine
3	πλέω	I sail
	τέλος	finally
	Ἰθάκη -ης ἡ	Ithaca
	εἶδον	(irregular aorist) I saw
	ὑπνος -ου ὁ	sleep
4	ἑταῖρος -ου ὁ	companion
	πλούσιος -α -ον	wealthy
	πολλοί -αί -ά	many
	Τροία -ας ἡ	Troy
	θησαυρός -ου ὁ	treasure
6	ἡμεῖς	we
	ἄλλος -η -ο	another
	χρυσός -ου ὁ	gold
	εὐθύς	immediately
	χειμῶν -ῶνος ὁ	storm
9	πόρῳ	far off
	ἤνεγκα	(irregular aorist of φέρω) I carried
	ἐγοηγοῶς	having woken up, on waking up
	ἀθλιώτατος -η -ον	very miserable

- 10 νῆσον βραδέως ἐπανήλθομεν. ὁ μέντοι Αἴολος θαυμάζων εἶπε, 'πῶς πάροι. ὦ Ὀδυσσευ; ἄρα θεὸς κακὸς ἐπεμψέ σε; ἐγὼ γὰρ δῶρα παρέχων ἀπέπεμψά σε πρὸς τὴν Ἰθάκην.' 'οἳ τε ἐταῖροι αἵτιοί εισιν, ὦ Αἴολε, καὶ ὁ ὑπνος. ἀλλὰ φίλος ὦν δῶρα αὐθις πάρεχε.' ὁ μέντοι Αἴολος εἶπεν, 'ἀπὸ τῆς νήσου εὐθὺς φευγε, ὦ κάκιστε. οὐ γὰρ παρέχομεν δῶρα ἀνθρώποις εἰ 15 οἱ θεοὶ ἐχθροὶ εἰσιν.'"

βραδέως

slowly

ἐπανήλθον

(irregular aorist) I returned

πάρεμι

I am here, I am present

ἐταῖρος -ου ὁ

companion

12 αἵτιος -α -ον

to blame, responsible

ὑπνος -ου ὁ

sleep

αὐθις

again

κάκιστος -η -ον

very bad, very wicked

εἰ

if

SUMMARY OF CHAPTER FIVE GRAMMAR

Accents

Acute, grave and circumflex accents post-date most major Greek authors. They originally denoted pitch rather than stress. They sometimes serve to distinguish otherwise identical words.

Third declension

There is a wide range of possibilities for the nominative singular, but other cases are formed by adding these endings to the genitive stem (which needs to be learned): acc sg -α (*same as nom if n*), gen -ος, dat -ι, nom pl -ες (*n -α*), acc -ας (*n -α*), gen -ων, dat -σι(ν). So e.g. γέρον (old man), gen γέροντος, stem γεροντ-; γίγας (giant), gen γίγαντος, stem γιγαντ-. Some dative plurals are adjusted to ease pronunciation, e.g. γίγασι(ν) instead of γιγαντισι(ν).

Elision

A (usually short) vowel ending a word is often elided – i.e. knocked off and represented by an inverted comma – if the next word starts with a vowel, representing pronunciation in practice (e.g. τ' for τε).

The uses of τις/τις

The word τις/τις (stem τιν-) exists in two forms. With an accent on the first or only syllable it is an interrogative *who/which/what?* With no accent (or an accent on the second syllable) it is an indefinite *a (certain), some (one/thing)*. Either can be used on its own as a pronoun or as an adjective with a noun. The interrogative version comes first word in a question. The indefinite version cannot come first, and if used as an adjective must follow its noun.

τις δούλος ἀποτρεχει;	Which slave is running away?	<i>interrogative adjective</i>
τις ἀποτρεχει;	Who is running away?	<i>interrogative pronoun</i>
δοῦλός τις ἀποτρεχει.	A certain slave is running away.	<i>indefinite adjective</i>
ἀποτρεχει τις.	Someone is running away.	<i>indefinite pronoun</i>

Cases taken by prepositions

Prepositions with the accusative often indicate motion towards, those with the genitive motion away from, and those with the dative rest or position in a place. But some are less obvious, e.g. μετά + acc = *after*, + gen = *with*; διὰ + acc = *on account of*, + gen = *through*. Note also διὰ τί; = *why?*

Personal pronouns and adjectives (first and second person singular)

The first person pronoun ἐγώ (*I*) has acc ἐμέ or με, gen ἐμοῦ or μου, dat ἐμοί or μοι. The versions with the epsilon are slightly more emphatic and often come first word. The shorter unaccented forms are 'enclitics', which depend on and closely follow another word. The associated adjective ἐμός -ή -όν (*my*) is usually sandwiched with the (untranslated) article, e.g. ἡ ἐμή οἰκία (*my house*).

The second person pronoun *σύ, σέ, σοῦ, σοῖ* (*you*) – the acc/gen/dat losing the accent if enclitic – has the associated adjective *σός ση σόν* (*your, of you* sg), used in the same way as the first person adjective.

Present participle (1)

A participle is part of a verb used as an adjective. The present participle (e.g. *παύων* = *stopping*) declines in the masculine like the third declension noun. The present participle describes something happening at the same time as the action of the main verb: if that is in the past, it is translated like an imperfect tense.

When a participle is used with a noun, word order and use of the article importantly affect the meaning.

‘circumstantial’ (describing what the slave was doing at the time):

ὁ δούλος φεύγων ἔπεσεν. The slave fell while running away.

‘attributive’ or ‘bound’ (identifying which slave we are talking about):

ὁ δούλος ὁ φεύγων ἔπεσεν. The slave who was running away fell.

(The participle uses repeated article rather than sandwich for ‘bound’ position.)

The participle of the verb *to be* is simply the participle endings with a smooth breathing: ὢν, γεν ὄντος (*being*).

CHAPTER FIVE VOCABULARY

αγρός -ου ό	field
άγων -ώνος ό	contest
άλλος -η -ο	other, another
άνεμος -ου ό	wind
άρχων -οντος ό	ruler, magistrate
βλάπτω έβλαψα	I harm, I damage
γέρων -οντος ό	old man
γίγας -αντος ό	giant
διά	(+ <i>acc</i>) on account of
	(+ <i>gen</i>) through
διά τι;	why?
έγώ	I
είδον	(<i>irregular aorist</i>) I saw
έκαστος -η -ον	each
εμβάλλω ένέβαλον	I throw in, I thrust in
έμός -ή -όν	my
έτι	still, yet
έτοιμος -η -ον	ready
κάλλιστος -η -ον	very fine, very beautiful
κλεπτω έκλεψα	I steal
κωλύω έκώλυσα	I hinder
λίθος -ου ό	stone
λιμήν -ενος ό	harbour
μετά	(+ <i>gen</i>) with
μόνον	only (<i>adverb</i>)
μόνος -η -ον	only, alone
μώρος -α -ον	foolish, stupid
νύξ νυκτός ή	night
οίνος -ου ό	wine
οιός τ' είμι	I am able
ολίγοι -αι -α	few
όνομα -ατος τό	name
παίς παιδός ό/ή	boy, girl, child
πάρεimi <i>imperfect</i> παρῆν	I am here, I am present
πίνω έπιον	I drink
πόθεν;	where from?
πολλοί -αί -ά	many
πούς ποδός ό	foot
πυρ πυρός τό	fire
σός ση σόν	your (of you <i>sg</i>)
σύ	you (<i>sg</i>)
σώμα -ατος τό	body
τίς; τί;	who? what? which?
τις τι	a (certain), someone, something
υπνος -ου ό	sleep
φύλαξ -ακος ό	guard

Chapter Six

PRESENT PARTICIPLE (2)

- Here is the present participle in full, for all three genders:

stopping

		<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	παύ-ων	παυ-ουσ-α	παῦ-ον
	<i>acc</i>	παυ-οντα	παύ-ουσ-αν	παῦ-ον
	<i>gen</i>	παύ-οντος	παυ-ούσ-ης	παύ-οντος
	<i>dat</i>	παύ-οντι	παυ-ούσ-η	παύ-οντι
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	παύ-οντες	παύ-ουσ-αι	παύ-οντα
	<i>acc</i>	παύ-οντας	παυ-ούσ-ας	παύ-οντα
	<i>gen</i>	παυ-όντων	παυ-ουσ-ών	παυ-όντων
	<i>dat</i>	παύ-ουσι(ν)	παυ-ούσ-αις	παύ-ουσι(ν)

- As we have seen already, the masculine is identical to a third declension noun like γέγων. The neuter is a predictable neuter version of this: nominative a 'reduced' (short *o*) version of the masculine; nominative and accusative the same; nominative and accusative plural ending in alpha.
- The feminine adds -ουσ- to the verb stem and then is identical to a first declension noun like θάλασσα (the version of first declension where on a consonant stem the alpha ending changes to eta after the accusative).
- And the participle of the verb *to be* (εἰμί) in full, for all three genders:

being

		<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	ὢν	οὔσα	ὄν
	<i>acc</i>	ὄντα	οὔσαν	ὄν
	<i>gen</i>	ὄντος	οὔσης	ὄντος
	<i>dat</i>	ὄντι	οὔσῃ	ὄντι
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	ὄντες	οὔσαι	ὄντα
	<i>acc</i>	ὄντας	οὔσας	ὄντα
	<i>gen</i>	ὄντων	οὔσων	ὄντων
	<i>dat</i>	οὔσι(ν)	οὔσαις	οὔσι(ν)

Exercise 6.1

Translate into English:

- 1 ἡ κόρη ἐπιστολὴν γράφουσα οὐκ ἤκουσε τὴν βοήν.
- 2 ἐγὼ τὸ τῆς κώμης ὄνομα χαλεπὸν ὄν οὐκ εμαθον.
- 3 αἱ παῖδες αἱ τὴν ἐμὴν οἰκίαν φυλάσσουσαι ἀνδρεῖαι ἦσαν.
- 4 θαυμάζομεν τὸ ἱερὸν ὥς* καλὸν ὄν.
- 5 ὁ ἄνθρωπος ὁ τὸν δοῦλον διώκων μέγιστος ἐστίν.
- 6 ἡ Ἀφροδίτη θεὰ οὐσα δῶρα τοῖς ἀνθρώποις παρέχει.
- 7 αἱ τοῦ διδασκάλου βιβλοὶ χρήσιμαί οὖσαι ἡμᾶς διδάσκουσιν.
- 8 ἄρα πιστεύεις τῇ θεᾷ τῇ τοὺς ποιητὰς διδάσκουσῃ;
- 9 ἐλάβομεν τὴν χώραν ὥς* χρησίμην οὖσαν.
- 10 ἄρα εἰσεδράμετε εἰς τὸ ἱερὸν τὸ τὴν μεγίστην θύραν ἔχον;

ἡμᾶς us (*acc pl*)

* ὥς (literally *as*) with a present participle specifies that the meaning is *because or on the grounds that*

Background: Alexander the Great

Alexander (356–323 BC) became in his short life the greatest general in Greek history. His father Philip II, king of Macedon in the northern mountains, had made himself leader (almost dictator) of the Greek city-states. Alexander inherited this role, and his father's ambition to lead an army against Persia to avenge the wrongs inflicted on Greece in the Persian Wars 150 years earlier.

Alexander also looked back even further for inspiration: to the Trojan War of Homer, on whose greatest hero Achilles he modelled himself. He spent the last ten years of his life creating the largest empire the world had yet seen, founding numerous cities named Alexandria after him, and penetrating as far as northern India.

Writers accompanied his campaign, and Alexander himself kept a diary. These works do not themselves survive. But we have numerous accounts from later Greek times that drew on contemporary sources. Some accounts are hostile, seeing Alexander as a tyrant corrupted by power. But the majority admire him as a supremely successful commander, a remarkable character, and a worthy heir of the Homeric heroes.

Exercise 6.2

Alexander and Bucephalas



Figure 6.1 A 15th-century Greek manuscript telling the history of Alexander the Great shown on this page with his horse Bucephalas. (Photo by Photo12/UIG/Getty Images.)

The young Alexander acquires the horse that will serve him faithfully in his career of conquest.

- Φιλόνεικος* ὁ Θεσσαλός. ἵππων ἐμπορος ὢν, πρὸς τὴν Μακεδονίαν καὶ τὰ τοῦ Φιλίππου βασιλείᾳ ποτε ἦλθεν. ἵππον γὰρ μέγιστον καὶ κάλλιστον εἶχεν. καὶ ὁ Φίλιππος εἶπε, "τι ἐστὶ τὸ τοῦ ἵππου ὄνομα;"
- "Βουκεφάλας ἐστὶ, διότι κεφαλὴν μεγίστην ἔχει, ὥσπερ βοῦς."
- 5 "καὶ τίς ἡ τιμή;"
- "τοῖα καὶ δέκα τάλαντα· ὁ γὰρ ἵππος ἄριστός ἐστιν."
- ὁ μέντοι Βουκεφάλας καίπεο κάλλιστος ὢν ἄγριος ἦν· ὥστ' οὐδεὶς τῶν τοῦ Φιλίππου δούλων καὶ φίλων οἷός τ' ἦν κατέχειν. ὁ οὖν Φίλιππος ἐκέλευσε τὸν Φιλόνεικον ἀπάγειν τὸν ἵππον.
- 10 ἔπειτα δὲ βοή τις ἦν. ὁ γὰρ Ἀλέξανδρος, ἔτι παῖς ὢν, εἶπεν·
- "μῶροί ἐστε. ὁ γὰρ Βουκεφάλας ἄριστός ἐστιν. διὰ τί ἀποπέμπει τὸν ἵππον ὁ ἐμὸς πατήρ;" ὁ οὖν Φίλιππος εἶπε τῷ παιδί, "ἄρα σύ, νέος ὢν,

* note that the first time a proper name occurs, the usual definite article is often omitted

	Φιλόνεικος -ου ὁ	Philoneikos
	Θεσσαλός -ου ὁ	Thessalian, man of Thessaly (<i>area of north-central Greece famous for horse-breeding</i>)
	ἐμπορος -ου ὁ	trader
1	Μακεδονία -ας ἡ	Macedonia
	Φίλιππος -ου ὁ	Philip
	βασιλεία -ων τά	palace
	ποτε	(<i>not a question</i>) once
	ἦλθον	(<i>irreg aor</i>) I came
4	Βουκεφάλας ὁ	Bucephalas
	κεφαλὴ -ῆς ἡ	head
	ὥσπερ	just as, like
	βοῦς ὁ	ox
	τιμή -ῆς ἡ	(<i>here</i>) price
6	τρία καὶ δέκα	thirteen
	τάλαντον -ου τό	talent (<i>very large unit of currency</i>)
	ἄριστος -η -ον	very good, excellent
	καίπερ	although, despite (<i>followed by participle</i>)
	ἄγριος -α -ον	wild
7	ὥστε	and so, as a result
	οὐδεὶς	no-one, none
	κατέχω	I restrain
	Ἀλέξανδρος -ου ὁ	Alexander
	πατήρ ὁ	father
12	νέος -α -ον	(<i>here</i>) young

οἷός τ' εἶ τον ἵππον κατέχειν; οἱ γὰρ ἐμοὶ φίλοι καὶ δοῦλοι, ἐμπειροὶ
 ὄντες, οὐχ οἷοί τ' ἦσαν. ἀλλ' ὁ Βουκεφάλας πάρεστί σοι. κάτεχε οὖν τὸν
 15 ἵππον· εἰ δὲ μὴ, τὴν σὴν προπέτειαν κολάσω."

ὁ οὖν Ἀλέξανδρος τῷ ἵππῳ εὐθὺς προσέδραμεν. τὰς δὲ ἡνίας ἔλαβε, καὶ
 τὸν ἵππον πρὸς τὸν ἥλιον ἐπεστορεψεν. ἔπειτα δὲ τὴν κεφαλὴν ψήχων
ἀνέβαινεν. πρότερον μὲν γὰρ ἡ σκιὰ φόβον παρείχε, νῦν δὲ ἤσυχος ἦν
 ὁ Βουκεφάλας. καὶ ὁ Ἀλέξανδρος ἐπισταμένως ἵππευσεν. ὁ οὖν Φίλιππος,
 20 περιχαρῆς ὢν, εἶπεν, "ὦ παῖ, δεῖ σε ἄλλην βασιλείαν εὐρίσκειν. ἡ γὰρ
 Μακεδονία οὐχ ἱκανή."

	κατέχω	I restrain
	ἐμπειρος -ον	experienced
	εἰ δὲ μὴ	but if not, otherwise
	προπέτεια -ας ἡ	rashness
15	κολάζω <i>future</i> κολάσω	I punish
	εὐθὺς	immediately
	ἡνίαι -ῶν αἱ	reins, bridle
	ἥλιος -ου ὁ	sun
	ἐπιστρέφω ἐπέστρεψα	I turn (something)
17	κεφαλὴ -ης ἡ	head
	ψήχω	I stroke
	ἀναβαίνω	I mount, I get on (a horse etc)
	σκιὰ -ας ἡ	shadow
	ἤσυχος -ον	calm
19	ἐπισταμένως	skilfully
	ἵππεύω ἵππευσα	I ride
	περιχαρῆς	delighted
	δεῖ σε	it is necessary for you (to, + <i>infinitive</i>)
	βασιλεία -ας ἡ	kingdom
21	ἱκανός -ή -όν	enough, sufficient

Exercise 6.3

Alexander Seeks Revenge

Alexander, after assuming power (at the age of twenty), explicitly links his heroic ancestry and his desire to punish the aggressors in the Persian Wars of 490–479 BC.

	ἐπεὶ δ' <u>ἐχθρός</u> τις ἀπέκτεινε τον Φίλιππον, ὁ Ἀλέξανδρος, ἐτι νεανίας ὦν, την <u>ἀρχήν</u> <u>παρέλαβεν</u> . τοὺς οὖν στρατηγούς <u>συνέλεξεν</u> · ἔπειτα δ' εἶπε, "στρατὸν μέγιστον πρὸς <u>Ἀσίαν</u> ἄξω. ὁ γὰρ <u>Ἀχιλλεύς</u> , στρατιώτης ἀνδρείος καὶ <u>πρόγονός</u> μοι, ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ <u>δόξαν</u> εἶλεν. καὶ ἐγὼ ἐθέλω	
5	<u>κολάζειν</u> τοὺς <u>βαρβάρους</u> . οἱ γὰρ βάρβαροι τοὺς <u>Ἕλληνας</u> <u>δυοῖν</u> <u>ἐμβολαῖς</u> <u>πάλαι</u> ἐβλαψαν."	
	ἐχθρός -ου ὁ	(as noun) enemy
	ἀρχή -ῆς ἡ	rule, power
	παραλαμβάνω παρέλαβον	I succeed to, I take over
	συνάγω συνέλεξα	I gather together
3	Ἀσία -ας ἡ	Asia
	Ἀχιλλεύς ὁ	Achilles (greatest Greek hero of the Trojan War)
	πρόγονος -ου ὁ	ancestor
	δόξα -ης ἡ	glory
5	κολάζω	I punish
	βάρβαροι -ων οἱ	barbarians
	Ἕλληνες -ων οἱ	Greeks
	δυοῖν	two (dat pl)
	ἐμβολή -ῆς ἡ	invasion
6	πάλαι	long ago

MORE USES OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE (1)

- As we have seen, the definite article is used with a noun:

	οἱ ποιηταί	
either	the poets (<i>the ones we are talking about</i>)	
or	poets (<i>as a class</i>)	

- It can also be used with an adjective:

οἱ σοφοί
the wise (*as a class*), wise men

τὸ ἀγαθόν
the good (*as an abstraction*), that which is good, goodness

- And so too with a participle:

οἱ τρέχοντες

those who are running, the ones running, the runners

This is like the attributive use

οἱ δοῦλοι οἱ τρέχοντες

the slaves who are running

but leaving the noun to be supplied (from gender, context, etc): in effect, the participle itself (like the adjective in the previous example) has become a noun. This is a very common Greek usage.

- Here too the participle can take an object or preposition phrase, which is sandwiched:

οἱ τὸν ἵππον διώκοντες

those chasing the horse, the men chasing the horse

αἱ εἰς τὴν κώμην τρέχουσαι

the women running into the village

Exercise 6.4

Translate into English:

- 1 ἐλάβομεν τοὺς φεύγοντας.
- 2 οἱ τὸν ποταμὸν φυλάσσοντες ἀνδρεῖοι ἦσαν.
- 3 τις ἐστὶν ἡ λεγούσα;
- 4 ἄρα θαυμάζεις τὸ καλόν;
- 5 οὐκ ἤκουσα τὰς τῆς τρεχούσης βοάς.
- 6 ὁ τοὺς παῖδας διδάσκων σοφός ἐστιν.
- 7 πολλὰ ἐλέγομεν τῷ τὸν στρατὸν τάσσοντι.
- 8 ὁ τὰ πλοῖα ἐξάγων ἐστὶ στρατηγός.
- 9 ἡ τὴν βουλὴν ἔχουσα ἐν τῇ ἐκκλησίᾳ οὐκ ἦν.
- 10 τί ἐστὶ τὸ τοῦ φεύγοντος ὄνομα;

Exercise 6.5

SAC

Translate into Greek:

- 1 The woman* who was running fell into the sea.
- 2 The temple, being very big, has two doors.
- 3 Who are the men* leading the horse?
- 4 The girl while writing a letter heard shouts.
- 5 The soldier chased the women* who were running away.

* no words for *woman*, *men*, etc are needed in these sentences: just use the participle with the appropriate ending (preceded by the appropriate part of the definite article)

MORE USES OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE (2)

- You have seen the definite article used with a noun:

οἱ διδάσκαλοι (the) teachers

and with an adjective:

οἱ ἀνδρεῖοι the brave, (the) brave men

and with a participle:

οἱ τρεχοντες those (who are) running, the runners

- It can also be used with an adverb:

οἱ νυν men now, people* of today
* the masculine is often used inclusively

ἡ ἐκεῖ the woman there

τα ἐνθάδε things here, affairs here

A noun (e.g. *men*, *woman*, *things*) is understood each time from the number and gender of the article. Another common adverb often used like this is *παλαι* = long ago:

οἱ πάλαι people (of) long ago, men of old

- The same thing can be done with a preposition phrase:

οἱ ἐν τῇ νήσῳ the people on the island

αἱ ἐν τῇ κώμῃ the women in the village

τα ἐν τῷ λιμένι the events* in the harbour

* Context will usually indicate the most appropriate translation of the neuter (e.g. *things, affairs, events*). Something comparable is done when neuter adjectives occur with neither article nor noun, e.g. *κακὰ ἐπαθον* = *they suffered bad things*.

These examples can be thought of as open or incomplete sandwiches, i.e. οἱ ἐν τῇ νήσῳ represents οἱ ἐν τῇ νήσῳ (ἀνθρώποι). You need to look ahead to see whether or not a noun to complete the sandwich is coming (e.g. οἱ ἐν τῇ νήσῳ δούλοι); if it is not, you make an appropriate inference from the gender of the article, and context.

Exercise 6.6

Translate into English:

- 1 οἱ ἐν τῇ ἐκκλησίᾳ ἤκουσαν τοὺς τοῦ στρατηγοῦ λόγους.
- 2 τίνες εἰσιν οἱ ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ;
- 3 αἱ τὴν κώμην φυλάσσουσαι ἔπαυσαν τὸν πόλεμον.
- 4 τίς ἐστὶν ὁ ἀγγέλλων τὰ περὶ τῆς ναυμαχίας;
- 5 οἱ μὲν πάλαι ἀνδρεῖοι ἦσαν, οἱ δὲ νῦν σοφοί.
- 6 ἄρα εἶδες τὴν τὸν ἐμὸν ἵππον διώκουσαν;
- 7 πῶς ἔμαθες τοὺς δεινοὺς λόγους;
- 8 ὁ τὸ δεῖπνον ἐσθίων δοῦλός ἐστιν.
- 9 οἱ ἐν τῇ νήσῳ ἐφύλασσον τὰ πλοῖα.
- 10 οἱ πολλάκις φεύγοντες οὐκ εἰσὶν ἀνδρεῖοι.

ἀγγέλλω

I announce, I report

περὶ (+ gen)

about, concerning

Exercise 6.7

Translate into Greek:

(no words needed for men, women, things etc: these are expressed by appropriate part of the article)

- 1 The men in the village were guarding the gate.
- 2 Who is the woman in the road?
- 3 The events in the war produced fear.
- 4 The man guarding the boats is a stranger.
- 5 The people in the assembly believed the messenger.

SHC

Exercise 6.8

Alexander and Hope

- καὶ ἐπεὶ ὁ Ἀλέξανδρος ἤθελε τὸν στρατὸν πρὸς Ἀσίαν ἄγειν, πάντα τὰ χορήματα τοῖς φίλοις πρῶτον ἐνείμην. ὁ οὖν Περδίκκας, φίλος τις τοῦ Ἀλεξάνδρου, εἶπεν αὐτῷ, “ὦ βασιλεῦ, πάντα τὰ χρήματα ἡμῖν ἐνείμας. ἀλλὰ τί σοι λοιπὸν ἐστίν;” “ἡ ἐλπίς,” εἶπεν ὁ Ἀλέξανδρος. ὁ οὖν
- 5 Περδίκκας ἐπεὶ ἤκουσε τὸν τοῦ Ἀλεξάνδρου λόγον εἶπεν αὐτῷ, “πρὸς Ἀσίαν καὶ πρὸς πόλεμον στοατεύων, ἐθέλω τὴν σὴν ἐλπίδα ἔχειν μᾶλλον ἢ τὰ σὰ χρήματα.”

	Ἀσία -ας ἡ	Asia
	πάντα	all
	χορήματα -ων τά	money
	νέμω ἐνείμα	I distribute
2	Περδίκκας ὁ	Perdiccas
	αὐτῷ	to him
	βασιλεὺς (νοσ βασιλεῦ) ὁ	king
	ἡμῖν	to us
	λοιπός -ή -όν	left, remaining
4	ἐλπίς -ιδος ἡ	hope
	αὐτῷ	to him
	στοατεύω	I march, I go on a campaign
	μᾶλλον ἢ	rather than

Exercise 6.9 (Revision)

Translate into English:

- 1 ὁ τοῦ πολέμου κίνδυνος νῦν μέγιστος ἐστίν.
- 2 ἡ θάλασσα, χαλεπὴ οὖσα, ἐκώλυσε τὸν ἄγγελον.
- 3 ἄρα ὁ τοὺς παιδας διδάσκων δοῦλός ἐστιν;
- 4 ὁ στρατιώτης εἰς τὸν ποταμὸν εἰσέπεσεν.
- 5 ἐθαυμάσαμεν τὰς σοφῶς λεγούσας.
- 6 τίνες εἰσὶν οἱ εἰς τὴν ἀγορὰν τρέχοντες;
- 7 δοῦλός τις ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ ἐστίν.
- 8 ὁ περὶ τῆς ναυμαχίας λόγος δεινὸς ἦν.
- 9 οἱ στρατιῶται οἱ φεῦγοντες ἵππον τινὰ ἤϋρον.
- 10 τὸ σὸν πλοῖον ἐν τῷ λιμένι οὐκ ἐστίν, ὦ νεανία.

Exercise 6.10

Translate into Greek:

- 1 The man writing the letter is wise.
- 2 The men of old used to suffer bad things.
- 3 The woman in the house did not hear the words of the general.
- 4 Night stopped the events* of the day.
- 5 The people there were guarding the women in the village.

*no word for events is needed: just *the things of the day* (using the neuter article)

REVISION CHECKPOINT

Make sure you know:

- the declension and uses of the present participle
- the use of the definite article with adjectives, participles, adverbs, and preposition phrases

Exercise 6.11

Alexander at Troy

Alexander reaches the site of Achilles' heroic exploits.

- ὁ δ' Ἀλέξανδρος, τον στρατόν πρὸς την Ἀσίαν ἄγων, πρὸς χώραν
 τινὰ προσήλθεν· ἐνθάδε ἡ Τροία πάλαι ἦν. ὁ οὖν Ἀλέξανδρος πρῶτον
 μὲν τῷ Πριάμῳ ἔθυσε, διὰ φόβον τῆς ὀργῆς αὐτοῦ. καὶ οἱ τῆς χώρας
 ἔνοικοι εἶπον, “ἦν πάλαι ἄλλος Ἀλέξανδρος. ὁ γὰρ Πάρις, ὁ τοῦ
 5 Πριάμου υἱός, ἄλλο ὄνομα εἶχεν· ὥστ' Ἀλέξανδρος ἦν, ὥσπερ σύ. εἰχομεν
 ἐτι νῦν τὴν τοῦ Ἀλεξάνδρου λύραν. ἄρ' ἐθέλεις ἰδεῖν;” ὁ μὲντοι
 Ἀλέξανδρος εἶπεν, “οὐ τὴν τοῦ Ἀλεξάνδρου λύραν ἀλλὰ τὸν τοῦ
 Ἀχιλλεὺς τάφον ἐθέλω ἰδεῖν. ὁ γὰρ Ἀχιλλεὺς ἥρως μέγιστος ἦν καὶ
 10 στέφανον ἐπὶ τῷ τάφῳ λείπων εἶπεν, “ὦ Ἀχιλλεῦ, πρόγονος ἐμός,
 σύμμαχος ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ ἴσθι.”
- | | | |
|----|-------------------------------------|---|
| | Ἀσία -ας ἡ | Asia |
| | προσῆλθον | (<i>irreg aor</i>) I came to |
| | Τροία -ας ἡ | Troy |
| | πάλαι | long ago |
| 3 | Πρίαμος -ου ὁ | Priam (<i>King of Troy at the time of the Trojan War</i>) |
| | θύω ἔθυσα | I sacrifice |
| | ὀργή -ῆς ἡ | anger |
| | αὐτοῦ | his, of him |
| 4 | ἐνοικος -ου ὁ | inhabitant |
| | Πάρις ὁ | Paris (<i>prince of Troy whose abduction of Helen started the Trojan War</i>) |
| | υἱός -ου ὁ | son |
| | ὥστε | and so, as a result |
| 6 | ὥσπερ | just as, like |
| | λύρα -ας ἡ | lyre (<i>musical instrument resembling simple harp</i>) |
| | ἰδεῖν | to see |
| 8 | Ἀχιλλεὺς -έως* (<i>voc -εὔ</i>) ὁ | Achilles (<i>greatest Greek hero in the Trojan War</i>) |
| | τάφος -ου ὁ | tomb |
| | ἥρως ὁ | hero |
| | πρόγονος -ου ὁ | ancestor |
| | στέφανος -ου ὁ | wreath, garland |
| 10 | ἐπὶ | (+ <i>dat</i>) on |
| | ἴσθι | be! (<i>sg imperative of εἶμι</i>) |

* note that with nouns of this type (which will be explained fully in Chapter Nine) the third declension genitive singular -ος is lengthened to -ως

THE USES OF αὐτός (1)

- We have already seen αὐτός = *himself*, αὐτοῦ = *his/of him*, αὐτούς = *them* (masc acc pl). These are parts of αὐτός, an extremely important word with a range of uses. Here is its declension in full:

		<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>
αὐ	<i>nom</i>	αὐτ-ός	αὐτ-ή	αὐτ-ό
	<i>acc</i>	αὐτ-όν	αὐτ-ήν	αὐτ-ό
	<i>gen</i>	αὐτ-οῦ	αὐτ-ῆς	αὐτ-οῦ
	<i>dat</i>	αὐτ-ῶ	αὐτ-ῇ	αὐτ-ῶ
αὐτ	<i>nom</i>	αὐτ-οί	αὐτ-αί	αὐτ-ά
	<i>acc</i>	αὐτ-ούς	αὐτ-άς	αὐτ-ά
	<i>gen</i>	αὐτ-ῶν	αὐτ-ῶν	αὐτ-ῶν
	<i>dat</i>	αὐτ-οῖς	αὐτ-αῖς	αὐτ-οῖς

- The declension in all three genders is like the adjective σοφός, except that (like the article, and many pronouns) the neuter nominative and accusative singular ends -ο rather than -ον.
- It has *three* separate meanings, according to context and word order:
 - (1) self (compare *auto-* in English);
 - (2) same;
 - (3) him/her/it/them
- The meaning is *self* when αὐτός is used with article + noun but *not sandwiched*:

ὁ στρατηγὸς αὐτός = the general himself*

- The meaning is *same* when αὐτός is sandwiched with article + noun:

ὁ αὐτὸς στρατηγός = the same general*

* Note that in both uses the word order is normally the same as the equivalent English (though with the first example αὐτός ὁ στρατηγός is also possible: the crucial point is that it is not sandwiched).

- The meaning is *him/her/it/them* (according to number and gender) when αὐτός is used on its own and is not in the nominative:

διδάσκω αὐτούς.
We teach them.

πιστεύω αὐτῇ.
I trust her.

Exercise 6.12

Translate into English:

- 1 ὁ γίγας αὐτὸς ἔφαγε τοὺς ἀνθρώπους.
- 2 δύο παῖδες τὸ αὐτὸ ὄνομα ἔχουσιν.
- 3 ὁ ξένος νῦν πάρεστιν, ἀλλὰ τίς φυλάσσει αὐτόν;
- 4 ὁ αὐτὸς στρατηγὸς ἔτασε τοὺς τε στρατιώτας καὶ τοὺς ναύτας.
- 5 οἱ θεοὶ αὐτοὶ τὰ δῶρα παρεχουσιν.
- 6 αὐτὴ ἡ παῖς διώξει τὸν ἵππον.
- 7 εἶδομεν αὐτοὺς φεύγοντας.
- 8 ἐθέλω εὐρίσκειν τὴν αὐτὴν ὁδόν.
- 9 οἱ λόγοι αὐτοὶ οὐ χαλεποὶ εἰσιν.
- 10 ὁ αὐτὸς ἵππος ἔφερεν αὐτούς.

Exercise 6.13



Translate into Greek:

- 1 I led him into the camp.
- 2 We were speaking the same words.
- 3 The judge himself taught me.
- 4 Who persuaded her to listen?
- 5 The house itself has two doors.

THE USES OF αὐτός (2)

All the uses of αὐτός you will meet come into one of the three categories described above: it is important to be clear about the distinction between them.

Note the following further points about each:

- (1) αὐτός = *self* is not necessarily third person: if it is nominative, its person is determined by the person ending of the verb (to which it adds emphasis). So for example:

ἄρα τὸν δούλον ἔλυσας αὐτός, ὦ γέρον;
Did you release the slave yourself, old man?

- (2) αὐτός = *same* is an adjective, as in the example above (ὁ αὐτὸς στρατηγός = *the same general*, parallel to e.g. ὁ σοφὸς στρατηγός = *the wise general*). Like any adjective, it can be used with the article alone (as a sort of incomplete

sandwich), to make a noun: so for example ὁ αὐτός = *the same man*, τὰ αὐτά = *the same things*. The crucial point here is that αὐτός coming immediately after the article always means 'same'.

- (3) αὐτόν etc (alone and *not* in the nominative) = *him/her/it/them* in contrast is always a pronoun and is always third person.

Exercise 6.14

Alexander's Leadership

Several versions of this story exist, set at different stages in his career, but the point is always to explain why Alexander's troops (enduring great hardship and long absence from home) remained so devoted to him.

- ὁ τοῦ Ἀλεξάνδρου στρατός διὰ χώρας τινὸς θεομῆς εβαινεν. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται ὔδωρ οὐκ εἶχον. καὶ ὁ Ἀλεξάνδρος αὐτός, καίπερ κακὰ πάσχων, ἐφ' ἵππον ἀναβαίνειν οὐκ ἤθελεν. οἱ οὖν στρατιῶται οἱοί τ' ἦσαν τὴν δίψαν φέρειν. ἐπεὶ εἶδον τὸν στρατηγὸν τὰ αὐτὰ πάσχοντα.
- 5 ἐπειτα δὲ τινες τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἀπὸ τῆς ὁδοῦ ἀπέδραμον· ἤθελον γὰρ ὔδωρ εὐρίσκειν. καὶ πηγὴν τινα μικρὰν τέλος ἤϋρον, ὔδωρ ολίγον ἔχουσιν. ἐπεὶ οὖν τὸ ὔδωρ συνέλεξαν. ἐν κόρυθι βραδεως ἔφερον, ὥσπερ ἄθλον ἀγαθὸν ὄν. ἐπεὶ δὲ τὸν στρατὸν αὐθις εἶδον, οἱ τὴν κόρυθα φέροντες τὸ ὔδωρ τῷ Ἀλεξάνδρῳ παρέσχον. ὁ μέντοι Ἀλέξανδρος εἶπεν
- 10 αὐτοῖς, "ὦ φίλοι, τοῦ δώρου χάριν εχω. ἀλλ' οὐχ οἷός τ' εἰμι πίνειν. οἱ γὰρ στρατιῶται, ὔδωρ οὐκ ἔχοντες, τὰ αὐτὰ κακὰ πάσχουσιν." καὶ ὁ Ἀλεξάνδρος τὴν κόρυθα εὐθύς κατέβαλεν.

	θερμός -ῃ -όν	hot
	ὔδωρ -ατος τό	water
	καίπερ	although (+ <i>participle</i>)
	ἐφ'	= ἐπί (<i>elided</i>) (+ <i>acc, here</i>) on, onto
3	ἀναβαίνω	I get up, I mount
	δίψα -ης ἡ	thirst
	φέρω	(<i>here</i>) I bear, I put up with
	πηγὴ -ῆς ἡ	spring
	τέλος	finally
6	ολίγος -η -ον	a little, a small amount of
	συνελεγω συνέλεξα	I collect (something)
	κόρυς -υθος ἡ	helmet
	βραδεως	slowly
	ὥσπερ	as if
8	αὐθις	again
	χάριν εχω	I am grateful (for, + <i>gen</i>)
	εὐθύς	immediately
	καταβάλλω κατέβαλον	I throw down

AORIST PARTICIPLE (1)

- The aorist active participle of verbs with a *first (weak) aorist* declines in the masculine exactly like a third declension noun such as γίγας. The endings are added to the *aorist stem*: i.e. normally the present stem plus sigma (but *without the augment*, which is used only for the tense itself):

sg	nom	παυσ-ας	having stopped (see notes below)
	acc	παυσ-αντα	
	gen	παύσ-αντος	
	dat	παύσ-αντι	
pl	nom	παυσ-αντες	
	acc	παύσ-αντας	
	gen	παυσ-αντων	
	dat	παύσ-ασι(ν)*	

* as will be familiar by now, this is a contraction of παυσ-αντισι(ν)

- The aorist participle is used to indicate a single action (rather than a process), and normally one that *has already happened* at the time of the action described in the main verb of the sentence. (This is the same principle we saw with the present participle, where the tense of the participle is *in relation to* that of the main verb.)
- The literal translation of the aorist participle (the way to think of it before recasting it into better English) is thus normally e.g. *having stopped*.
- If the main narrative is in the past, it will often be appropriate to translate the aorist participle like a pluperfect: *having done X, they did Y* comes out as *when they had done X, they did Y*. This is comparable to the way a present participle is often translated like an imperfect: *(while) doing X, they (suddenly) did Y* comes out as *when they were doing X, they did Y*.
- The uses of the aorist participle, the effect of the article, and the possible introductory words in translation (*when . . . , who . . .* etc) are similar to those of the present participle, except that *while . . .* is replaced by *after . . .*

Exercise 6.15

Translate into English:

- 1 ὁ δοῦλος λύσας τὸν ἵππον πρὸς τὴν οἰκίαν προσέδραμεν.
- 2 ἄρα πιστεύεις τῷ τὴν ἐπιστολὴν γράψαντι;
- 3 ὁ παῖς τὰς βοὰς ἀκούσας πρὸς τὴν σὴν οἰκίαν ἐφυγεν.
- 4 τίς ἐστὶν ὁ στρατηγὸς ὁ τοὺς στρατιώτας τάξας;
- 5 ὁ τὴν ἐπιστολὴν πέμψας σύμμαχος ἐστίν.
- 6 θαυμάζομεν τὸν τοὺς παῖδας διδάξαντα.
- 7 δῶρον παρεχω τῷ τὸν δοῦλον διώξαντι.
- 8 ὁ ποιητὴς ὁ τὸν δῆμον πείσας τιμὴν ἔχει.
- 9 οἱ αὐταί, τὰ πλοῖα δύο ὥρας φυλάξαντες, ἀπέδραμον.
- 10 πιστεύομεν τῷ τὴν ναυμαχίαν παύσαντι.

- Here is the first (weak) aorist participle in full, for all three genders:

		<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>
sg	<i>nom</i>	παυσ-ας	παύσ-ασ-α	παύσ-αν
	<i>acc</i>	παύσ-αντα	παύσ-ασ-αν	παυσ-αν
	<i>gen</i>	παύσ-αντος	παυσ-άσ-ης	παύσ-αντος
	<i>dat</i>	παύσ-αντι	παυσ-άσ-η	παύσ-αντι
pl	<i>nom</i>	παύσ-αντες	παυσ-ασ-αι	παύσ-αντα
	<i>acc</i>	παύσ-αντας	παυσ-άσ-ας	παύσ-αντα
	<i>gen</i>	παυσ-άντων	παυσ-ασ-ῶν	παυσ-άντων
	<i>dat</i>	παύσ-ασι(ν)	παυσ-άσ-αις	παύσ-ασι(ν)

- As we have already seen, the masculine is identical to a third declension noun such as γίγας.
- As with the present participle, the neuter here too is third declension, and a predictable variant of the masculine: its nominative a shortened version of the stem; nominative and accusative the same; nominative and accusative plural ending in alpha.
- Also as with the present participle, the feminine adds another syllable to the verb stem (this time -ασ-) and then is identical to a first declension noun like θάλασσα.
- Both present and aorist participles are thus '3-1-3' in declension: i.e. the masculine is third, the feminine is first, and the neuter is third. The formula could be more fully expressed as 3(m)-1(f)-3(n), but because the masculine-feminine-neuter order is conventional, 3-1-3 is enough.

THE ADJECTIVE *πᾶς*

- Adjectives you have seen so far, e.g. σοφός, are (to use a similar formula) 2-1-2 in declension: i.e. the masculine is second, the feminine is first, and the neuter is second declension. (Like Latin *bonus*.) There are also third declension adjectives. An extremely common one is *πᾶς* = *all* (also *each*, *every*). This is identical in formation to a first (weak) aorist participle. It is likewise 3-1-3 in declension. Here it is in full:

	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>
3rd			
<i>nom</i>	<i>πᾶς</i>	<i>πᾶσα</i>	<i>πᾶν</i>
<i>acc</i>	<i>πάντ-α</i>	<i>πᾶσα-ν</i>	<i>πᾶν</i>
<i>gen</i>	<i>παντ-ός</i>	<i>πάσ-ης</i>	<i>παντ-ός</i>
<i>dat</i>	<i>παντ-ί</i>	<i>πάσ-η</i>	<i>παντ-ί</i>
1st			
<i>nom</i>	<i>πάντ-ες</i>	<i>πᾶσαι</i>	<i>πάντ-α</i>
<i>acc</i>	<i>πάντ-ας</i>	<i>πάσ-ας</i>	<i>πάντ-α</i>
<i>gen</i>	<i>πάντ-ων</i>	<i>πασ-ών</i>	<i>πάντ-ων</i>
<i>dat</i>	<i>πᾶσι(ν)</i>	<i>πάσ-αις</i>	<i>πᾶσι(ν)</i>

- When used (as it commonly is) with a noun and the article, *πας* does not sandwich:

e.g. πάντες οἱ πολῖται
 all the citizens (*same order as English*)
 or οἱ πολῖται πάντες (*with the same meaning*)

- Like any adjective, it can also be used alone (leaving a noun to be understood from the number, gender, and context):

e.g. πάντες ἔφυγον.
 They all ran away.
 πάντα μανθάνει.
 He learns all things (*or everything*).

- The presence of the article in the singular usually indicates that the meaning is *the whole (of)* rather than *every*:

e.g. πάντα τὸν μῦθον μανθάνω.
 I learn the whole story.

Contrast:

πάντα μῦθον μανθάνω.
 I learn every story.

- A high percentage of English words beginning *pan-* or *pant-* are derivatives of *πας*.

Exercise 6.16

Give the English meaning, and the Greek word joined to pan(t), in:

- 1 pandemic
- 2 Pandora
- 3 pantheism
- 4 pantograph
- 5 pantophobia

Exercise 6.17

Translate into English:

- 1 ἡ κόρη ἢ πάντας τοὺς ἵππους λύσασα ἐν τῇ κώμῃ ἐστίν.
- 2 τίνες εἰσὶν οἱ τον δημον πείσαντες;
- 3 ἔχομεν τὸ ναυτικὸν τὸ τὸν πόλεμον παυσαν.
- 4 πολλάκις διδάξας αἰὲ μανθάνω.
- 5 αἱ τὴν κώμην φυλάξασαι ἀνδρεῖαι εἰσιν.
- 6 ἄρα πιστεύεις παντὶ τῷ μύθῳ;
- 7 ἡ θεά, τὰς βοᾶς ἀκούσασα, ἄγγελον ἐπεμψεν.
- 8 οἱ παῖδες εἰς πάντα κίνδυνον εἰσέπιπτον.
- 9 τί ἐστὶ τὸ ὄνομα τῆς τὴν βίβλον γραψάσης;
- 10 οἱ τοὺς πολεμίους διώξαντες σύμμαχοί εἰσιν.

πολεμιοὶ -ων οἱ enemy (*in war*; *εχθρός is used for a personal enemy*)

Exercise 6.18

Translate into Greek:

- 1 They have all the gifts.
- 2 The soldiers, after guarding the island for five days, were no longer willing to remain.
- 3 The woman who had written the letter was not in the house.
- 4 Those who have heard the story trust the messenger.
- 5 I want to find the man who has released the horses.



REVISION CHECKPOINT

Make sure you know:

- the declension and three main uses of *αυτός*
- the declension and meaning of the first (weak) aorist participle (all three genders)
- the declension and use of *πας*

Exercise 6.19

Alexander and the Gordian Knot (1)

This story has become proverbial for solving a difficulty by drastic means.

- ὁ δ' Ἀλέξανδρος εἰσηλθεν εἰς τόπον τινά, Γόρδιον ὀνόματι. ὁ τόπος ὄνομα εχει ἀπὸ ἀνθρώπου τινος τῶν πάλαι. ὁ γὰρ Γόρδιος πένης ἦν. οἰκίαν μικράν ἐν τοῖς ἀγροῖς εἶχεν. ἦν δ' αὐτῷ υἱός, Μίδας ὀνόματι. πόλις δέ τις εγγύς ἦν, καὶ ἐκεῖ στάσις μεγίστη ἐν τοῖς πολίταις. οἱ μέντοι
- 5 πολῖται ἐθαύμασαν μαντεῖον τῶν θεῶν ἀκούσαντες. "ἄμαξα ἄξει ὑμῖν σωτήρα· καὶ βασιλεὺς ὦν τὰ ἐν ὑμῖν κακὰ παύσει." ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ πολῖται

	εἰσηλθον	(<i>irreg aor</i>) I came in
	τόπος -ου ὁ	place
	Γόρδιον -ου τό	Gordium
	πάλαι	long ago
2	Γόρδιος -ου ὁ	Gordius
	πένης -ητος ὁ	poor man
	υἱός -οῦ ὁ	son
	Μίδας ὁ	Midas
	πόλις ἡ	city
4	εγγύς	(<i>here</i>) nearby
	στάσις ἡ	civil strife, revolution
	μαντεῖον -ου τό	oracle, oracular response
	ἄμαξα -ης ἡ	cart
	ὑμῖν	you (<i>dat pl</i>)
6	σωτήρ -ηρος ὁ	saviour, deliverer
	βασιλεὺς ὁ	king

περὶ τοῦ μαντείου ἐτι ἔλεγον, ὁ Μίδας καοπὸν φέρων ἐν τῇ τοῦ Γορδίου ἀμάξῃ, εἰς τὴν ἀγορὰν εἰσηλθεν. οἱ δὲ πολῖται εἶπον, “ὦ ξένε, ὦ βασιλεῦ, εἰς καιρὸν ἦλθες.” ὁ οὖν Μίδας, βασιλεὺς νῦν ὢν, τὰ τῶν πολιτῶν κακὰ 10 παύσας, τὴν ἀμαξάν ἐν τῷ ἱερῷ ἔλιπεν ὡς χαριστήριον.

περί	about, concerning (+ <i>gen</i>)
μαντεῖον -ου τό	oracle, oracular response
καρπός -ου ὁ	produce, harvest
ἄμαξα -ης ἡ	cart
8 εἰσηλθον	(<i>irreg aor</i>) I came in
βασιλεὺς (<i>voc</i> βασιλεῦ) ὁ	king
εἰς καιρὸν	at just the right time
ἦλθον	(<i>irreg aor</i>) I came
χαριστήριον -ου τό	thank-offering

AORIST PARTICIPLE (2)

- The aorist participles you have seen so far (e.g. παύσας) are of verbs with a *first* (or *weak*) aorist: normally adding sigma to the stem, and with an alpha in most bits both of the tense itself and of the participle.
- Verbs with a *second* (or *strong*) aorist (e.g. λαμβάνω), as we saw, form the aorist *tense* by borrowing the endings of the *imperfect* tense and putting them onto a special *aorist stem* (very often a shortened version of the present stem):

e.g.	imperfect	ἐλάμβανον
	aorist	ἔλαβον

Verbs with a second aorist form their aorist *participle* by borrowing the endings of the *present participle* and putting them onto the *aorist stem* (again *without the augment*, which is used only for the tense itself).

e.g.	present participle	λαμβάνων
	aorist participle	λαβών

- Here is the second (strong) aorist participle in full, for all three genders:

		<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	λαβ-ών	λαβ-ούσ-α	λαβ-όν
	<i>acc</i>	λαβ-όντα	λαβ-ούσ-αυ	λαβ-όν
	<i>gen</i>	λαβ-όντος	λαβ-ούσ-ης	λαβ-όντος
	<i>dat</i>	λαβ-όντι	λαβ-ούσ-ῃ	λαβ-όντι
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	λαβ-όντες	λαβ-ούσ-αι	λαβ-όντα
	<i>acc</i>	λαβ-όντας	λαβ-ούσ-ας	λαβ-όντα
	<i>gen</i>	λαβ-όντων	λαβ-ουσ-ών	λαβ-όντων
	<i>dat</i>	λαβ-ούσι(ν)	λαβ-ουσ-αις	λαβ-ούσι(ν)

- This works for verbs with a fairly regular or predictable aorist stem:

e.g.	present participle	μανθάνων
	aorist participle	μαθών

and for verbs with a completely irregular aorist stem:

e.g.	present participle	τρέχων
	aorist participle	δραμών

So long as you know, or look up, the aorist tense, the formation of the aorist participle should cause no difficulty. There is a list of aorist tenses and stems on page 162 below.

Exercise 6.20

Translate into English:

- 1 ὁ γίγας, δέκα ναύτας λαβών, ἔφαγε πάντας.
- 2 κακὰ παθόντες, ἐκ τῆς ναυμαχίας ἐφύγομεν.
- 3 οἱ πάντας τοὺς λόγους μαθόντες σοφοὶ εἰσιν.
- 4 αἱ παῖδες, τὸ δεῖπνον φαγοῦσαι, ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ ἔμενον.
- 5 τίς ἐστιν ὁ δοῦλος ὁ εἰς τον ποταμὸν εἰσπεσών;
- 6 ὁ στρατηγὸς ὁ τον στρατὸν ἄγων σοφός τε καὶ ἀγαθός ἐστιν.
- 7 οἱ στρατιῶται, πρὸς το στρατόπεδον προσδραμόντες, φόβον οὐκ εἶχον.
- 8 αἱ τον ἄγγελον εὐροῦσαι πρὸς τὴν ἀγορὰν προσήγαγον αὐτόν.
- 9 οἱ ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ ἀποθανόντες ἀνδρεῖοι ἦσαν.
- 10 τὴν βίβλον ἀποβαλὼν χαλεπῶς μανθάνω.

Exercise 6.21

Translate into Greek:

- 1 The boys, having taken the gift, ran away.
- 2 The woman who had found the letter was waiting in the agora.
- 3 After leading the army out of danger, the general found a small village.
- 4 When I had learned the words I threw away the book.
- 5 The man who ate my dinner is a slave.

Exercise 6.22**Alexander and the Gordian Knot (2)**

Figure 6.2 *Alexander the Great cutting the Gordian Knot, shown in a 17th-century engraving. (Photo by Fine Art Images/Heritage Images/Getty Images.)*

καὶ μετὰ πολλὰς γενεὰς ἡ τοῦ Γορδίου ἄμαξα ἐν τῷ ἱερῷ ἔτι ἦν, καὶ
τιμὴν μεγίστην εἶχεν. πρῶτον μὲν γὰρ παλαιὰ ἦν, καὶ ἐν αὐτῇ εἰσηλθεν
ὁ Μίδας ὡς βασιλεὺς. ἔπειτα δὲ ἐν τῷ τοῦ ζυγοῦ δεσμῷ ἦν ἄμμα δεινόν
τε καὶ πολύπλοκον, ὥστ' οὐδεὶς οἶός τ' ἦν λύειν. καὶ λόγος τις ἐν τοῖς
5 πολίταις ἦν. "ὁ τὸ ἄμμα λύσας βασιλεὺς τῆς Ἀσίας ἔσται." ὁ οὖν
Ἀλέξανδρος τον λόγον ἀκούσας εἰς τὸ ἱερόν εἰσηλθεν. τὴν δὲ ἄμαξαν
καὶ τὸ ἄμμα εἶδεν. καὶ μάχαιραν λαβὼν τὸ ἄμμα ἔλυσεν. απάτη ἦν,
ἀλλὰ μεγαλοποεπής.

	γενεα -ās ἡ	generation
	Γόρδιος -ου ὁ	Gordius
	ἄμαξα -ης ἡ	cart
	παλαιός -ά -όν	ancient
2	εἰσηλθον	(irreg aor) I came in
	Μίδας ὁ	Midas
	βασιλεὺς ὁ	king
	ζυγόν -οῦ τό	yoke
	δεσμός -οῦ ὁ	fastening
3	ἄμμα -ατος τό	knot
	πολύπλοκος -ον	intricate
	ὥστε	with the result that
	οὐδεὶς	no-one
	Ἀσία -ας ἡ	Asia
5	ἔσται	he will be
	μάχαιρα -ας ἡ	small sword
	απάτη -ης ἡ	cheating
	μεγαλοπρεπής	magnificent

NUMERALS

You have already seen several (e.g. δύο *two*; δέκα *ten*). Here are the cardinal numbers 1 to 10:

εἰς μία ἓν (ἐν-)	one
δύο	two
τρεις τρία	three
τέσσαρες τέσσαρα	four
πέντε	five
εξ	six
επτά	seven
ὀκτώ	eight
ἐννέα	nine
δέκα	ten

- Only 1 to 4 change their endings; the others are indeclinable.

- One is 3-1-3 in declension (i.e. masculine and neuter are third declension, with stem *έν-*; feminine is first declension like *χώρα*):

	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	
<i>nom</i>	εἷς	μία	ἓν	one
<i>acc</i>	ἕνα	μίαν	έν	
<i>gen</i>	ένός	μιας	ένός	
<i>dat</i>	ένι	μια	ένί	

The breathing (and accent, or absence of it) distinguish between:

	εἷς	one (<i>masculine nom</i>)
and	εἰς	into (<i>prep + acc</i>)

Also between:

	ἓν	one (<i>neuter nom/acc</i>)
and	έν	in (<i>prep + dat</i>)

- Two changes in the genitive and dative, but is the same for all genders:

<i>nom</i>	δύο	two
<i>acc</i>	δύο	
<i>gen</i>	δυοῖν	
<i>dat</i>	δυοῖν	

(These endings are a fossilised remainder of the *dual*, a set of forms widely used in earlier Greek for both nouns and verbs when referring to *two* of anything: the plural was used originally for three or more.)

- Three is a slight variation of third declension (but just 3-3, not 3-1-3: i.e. there is no separate feminine: this is unlike *one*, and unlike the third declension participles and adjectives you have seen so far - though like a common pattern in Latin, e.g. *ingens*, *portans*).

	<i>masclfem</i>	<i>neuter</i>
<i>nom</i>	τρεις	τρία
<i>acc</i>	τρεις	τρία
<i>gen</i>	τριῶν	τριῶν
<i>dat</i>	τρισί(ν)	τρισί(ν)

- Four is regular third declension (3-3) in just the same way:

	<i>masclfem</i>	<i>neuter</i>
<i>nom</i>	τέσσαρες	τέσσαρα
<i>acc</i>	τέσσαρας	τέσσαρα
<i>gen</i>	τεσσάρων	τεσσάρων
<i>dat</i>	τεσσαρσι(ν)	τεσσαρσι(ν)

Ordinal numbers (the adjectival ones, telling you the *order* things come in) corresponding to 1-5 (the only ones needed for GCSE) are:

πρῶτος -η -ον	first
δεύτερος -α -ον	second
τρίτος -η -ον	third
τέταρτος -η -ον	fourth
πέμπτος -η -ον	fifth

- These decline like ordinary 2-1-2 adjectives: thus πρῶτος goes like σοφός (with eta in the feminine), whilst δεύτερος goes like μικρός (with alpha in the feminine).
- The ordinal numbers are also used like any adjective. When they have the article (where *the* would be used in English) it is sandwiched or repeated.

EXPRESSING TIME (2)

We saw in Chapter Two that *time how long* is expressed by the accusative:

τρεις ὥρας ἐτρέχομεν.
We were running for three hours.

Time within which is expressed by the genitive:

τον στρατὸν τριῶν ἡμερῶν πέμψομεν.
We shall send the army within three days.

Time when (e.g. the hour at which, day on which) is expressed by the dative:

τη τετάρτῃ ἑσπέρα τοὺς συμμάχους εἶδομεν.
On the fourth evening we saw the allies.

The accusative and genitive versions naturally go with cardinal (ordinary) numbers, the dative version with an ordinal number. Different expressions of time may be contrasted within the same sentence:

οἱ στρατιῶται τεσσαρας ἡμέρας ἐφύλασσον την κώμην, ἀλλὰ τῇ πέμπτῃ ἔφυγον.
The soldiers were guarding the village for four days, but on the fifth (day) they ran away.

- Contrast the situation in Latin, where *time how long* is expressed by the accusative (as in Greek), but *time within which* and *time when* are both expressed by the ablative. Notice again how Greek makes more and clearer distinctions, despite having fewer cases available: it makes them work harder.

Exercise 6.23

Translate into English:

- 1 τρεῖς ἡμέρας ἐμένομεν, ἀλλὰ τῇ τετάρτῃ ἐφύγομεν.
- 2 ὁ πρῶτος ἀγὼν δεινὸς τε καὶ χαλεπὸς ἐστίν.
- 3 ἡ δευτέρα νίκη ἐπαυσε τὸν πόλεμον.
- 4 ἡ παῖς ὀλίγων ὥρῶν πάσας τὰς ἐπιστολάς γράψει.
- 5 πέντε πλοῖα ἐν τῷ λιμένι ἦν.
- 6 ὁ δοῦλος αὐτὸς ἤρξε τὴν δευτέραν θύραν.
- 7 αἱ ἐν τῇ νήσῳ πλοῖον εἶδον τῇ πέμπτῃ ἐσπέρα.
- 8 τί ἐστὶ τὸ τρίτον ἄθλον;
- 9 οἱ δύο στρατηγοὶ φύλακες ἦσαν τῶν δυοῖν πυλῶν.
- 10 δέκα στρατιῶται μετὰ τριῶν ἵππων τὸν ἄγγελον πρὸς τὴν κώμην προσήγαγον.

Exercise 6.24

Translate into Greek:

- 1 The second assembly sent another boat.
- 2 The soldiers were in very great danger for three days.
- 3 We sent one messenger and one letter.
- 4 Five boys were carrying the two bodies.
- 5 Will the gods prevent a second sea-battle within four days?



Exercise 6.25

Explain the derivation of:

- 1 pentathlon
- 2 trilogy
- 3 henotheism
- 4 octopus
- 8 Deuteronomy

THE USE OF οὐδείς

This pronoun/adjective meaning *no-one*, *nothing*, *no* (i.e. *not any*) is simply the word οὐδε *not even* joined onto the appropriate part of the word *one* (thus literally *not even one*). The epsilon on the end of οὐδε is elided before the epsilon at the beginning of the masculine and neuter parts of *one*, e.g. οὐδε + εἷς = οὐδεις (and the rough breathing on εἷς disappears).

Hence in full:

	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>
<i>nom</i>	οὐδ-εἷς	οὐδε-μία	οὐδ-έν
<i>acc</i>	οὐδ-ένα	οὐδε-μίαν	οὐδ-έν
<i>gen</i>	οὐδ-ενός	οὐδε-μιᾶς	οὐδ-ενός
<i>dat</i>	οὐδ-ενί	οὐδε-μια	οὐδ-ενί

- It is very common as a pronoun:

οὐδεις ἤκουσε την βοήν.
No-one heard the shout.

οὐδὲν ἐν τῷ πλοίῳ ἤυρομεν.
We found nothing in the boat.

If the pronoun is followed by a genitive plural, the translation *none (of . . .)* is appropriate:

οὐδεις των δούλων ἐφύλασσε τὴν θύραν.
None of the slaves was guarding the door.

- It is also often used as an adjective, where the translation *no . . .* (meaning *not any*) is appropriate:

οὐδεμίαν βουλὴν ἔχομεν.
We have no plan.

οὐδένα δούλον εἶδον.
They saw no slave.

- As a masculine or feminine pronoun it corresponds to Latin *nemo*, as a neuter pronoun to Latin *nihil*, and as an adjective to Latin *nullus -a -um*.

Exercise 6.26

Translate into English:

- 1 οὐδεὶς ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ ἐστίν.
- 2 οὐδεμία τῶν κορῶν εἶδε τὸ πλοῖον.
- 3 οὐδένα στρατηγὸν νῦν ἔχομεν.
- 4 ὁ δοῦλος οὐδενὶ δεῖπνον παρέχειν ἐθέλει.
- 5 οὐδὲν ἐν τῷ ἱερῷ ἦν.

Exercise 6.27

Translate into Greek:

- 1 I sent no-one to the harbour.
- 2 No slave took the second book.
- 3 We heard no shout.
- 4 Nothing will prevent the battle.
- 5 The messenger himself trusts no-one.



Exercise 6.28

Alexander's Trust

There were several actual or alleged plots against Alexander's life, but observers were impressed by how he continued to trust people, and his own judgement.

- ὁ δ' Ἀλέξανδρος πρὸς τὴν Ταρσον ποτε ἦλθεν. ἐκεῖ λουτρον καλὸν ἦν.
ὁ μέντοι Ἀλέξανδρος διὰ τὸν ποταμὸν ἔπεσεν εἰς νόσον τινα δεινὴν. καὶ
θανάτου κίνδυνος ἦν· οὐδεὶς γὰρ οἷός τ' ἦν σώζειν αὐτόν. ἦν μέντοι
ἰατρος τις, ὀνόματι Φίλιππος. καὶ πάντες αὐτῷ ἐπίστευον. ὁ δὲ Φίλιππος
5 ἤθελε φάρμακόν τι τῷ Ἀλεξάνδρῳ παρέχειν. ὁ οὖν βασιλεὺς ἐπένευσε,
καὶ ὁ Φίλιππος τὸ φάρμακον ἐν κύλικι παρασκεύαζεν. ἔπειτα δὲ
στρατηγὸς τις ἐπιστολὴν ἐπεμψεν. ἐν δὲ τῇ ἐπιστολῇ εἶπε τῷ Ἀλεξάνδρῳ
ὅτι οἱ ἐχθροί, χρήματα παρασχόντες, ἔπεισαν τὸν Φίλιππον ἀποκτείνειν
τὸν Ἀλέξανδρον. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ ἰατρός παρῆν, ὁ βασιλεὺς τὴν κύλικα λαβὼν
10 εἶπεν τὴν ἐπιστολήν. ἅμα οὖν ὁ μὲν Ἀλέξανδρος ἐπινεν, ὁ δὲ Φίλιππος
τὴν ἐπιστολήν ἀνεγίνωσκεν.

	Ταρσός -οῦ ἡ	Tarsus (<i>city in modern southern Turkey</i>)
	ποτε	once ('indefinite' use, not asking a question)
1	λουτρον -ου τό	bathing-place
	σώζω	I save
	ἰατρός -ου ὁ	doctor
	Φίλιππος -ου ὁ	Philip
	φάρμακον -ου τό	drug
5	βασιλεὺς ὁ	king
	ἐπινεύω ἐπένευσα	I consent
	κύλιξ -ικος ἡ	cup
	παρασκεύαζω	I prepare
	ὅτι	that
8	ἐχθρός -ου ὁ	(personal) enemy
	χρήματα -ων τά	money
	φαίνω εἶφην	I show, I reveal
	ἅμα	at the same time
	ἀναγινώσκω	I read

PERSONAL PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES (First and Second Person Plural)

We have already met the first and second person singular pronouns and their associated adjectives (pronouns shown with nom/acc/gen/dat, adjectives with m/f/n endings):

ἐγώ, ἐμέ (με), ἐμοῦ (μου), ἐμοί (μοι)	I
ἐμός -ή -όν	my
σύ, σέ, σοῦ, σοί	you (sg)
σός, σή, σόν	your (of you sg)

The first person plural pronoun is a slight variant of third declension:

<i>nom</i>	ἡμεῖς	we
<i>acc</i>	ἡμᾶς	
<i>gen</i>	ἡμῶν	
<i>dat</i>	ἡμῖν	

The associated adjective is:

ἡμέτερος -α -ον our

The second person plural pronoun is very similar:

<i>nom</i>	ὕμεῖς	you (pl)
<i>acc</i>	ὕμας	
<i>gen</i>	ὕμῶν	
<i>dat</i>	ὕμῖν	

As is the associated adjective:

ὕμέτερος -α -ον your (of you pl)

- To remember which is which, note that the word for *we* has a long *e* sound, and the word for *you* (pl) a long *u* sound.
- As with other pronouns and possessive adjectives, these are most often used for emphasis or to draw a contrast. (The person ending on the verb of course normally suffices to indicate e.g. *we* as subject; and the article with a noun can often be *translated* as a possessive, because it implies *the one naturally applicable*.) Where possessive adjectives are used, they have the article as well (sandwiched or repeated - but not translated).

Exercise 6.29

Translate into English:

- 1 ημεῖς μὲν σοφοὶ ἐσμεν, ὑμεῖς δὲ ἀνδρεῖοι.
- 2 πάντες φυλάσσομεν τὴν ἡμετέραν κώμην.
- 3 τίς τὸ δεῖπνον ὑμῖν παρέσχεν;
- 4 ὁ ἄγγελος ἡμᾶς φεύγοντας οὐκ εἶδεν.
- 5 οὐχ ἡ ἐμὴ βουλὴ ἀλλ' ἡ ὑμετέρα πείσει τοὺς πολίτας.

Exercise 6.30

Translate into Greek:

- 1 Our soldiers are always brave.
- 2 We were waiting, but you (*pl*) ran away.
- 3 The general himself provides horses for us.
- 4 Who found your house, friends?
- 5 The giant did not eat us.

SAC

POSSESSIVE DATIVE

As well as saying e.g.

βουλὴν ἔχομεν

for *we have a plan*, it is also possible – and very common – to say

βουλή ἐστὶν ἡμῖν

(literally *there is to us a plan*) with the same meaning.

Likewise,

ὁ κριτὴς καλὴν οἰκίαν ἔχει

and καλὴ οἰκία τῷ κριτῇ ἐστὶν

are both good Greek for *the judge has a fine house* – the possessive dative is in fact more idiomatic (the more natural way the language would express the idea). This is possible in Latin too (e.g. *est mihi canis*, literally *there is a dog to me*, for *I have a dog*), but less common.

Exercise 6.31

Translate into English:

- 1 ὑμῖν εἰσὶν ἀνδρεῖοι σύμμαχοι.
- 2 ἔστι μοι ἄθλον κάλλιστον.
- 3 ἄρα ἵππος τῷ ἀγγέλῳ ἦν;
- 4 τῷ στρατηγῷ αὐτῷ πολλὰ ἔργα ἐστίν.
- 5 ἦσαν τῷ διδασκάλῳ δέκα βιβλοί.

Exercise 6.32

Translate into Greek (using the possessive dative):

- 1 I have two horses.
- 2 The girl has a fine voice.
- 3 You (*pl*) have a wise general.
- 4 We had a very great victory.
- 5 Which boat do the boys have?



Exercise 6.33

Alexander's Kindness

This is one of many stories illustrating Alexander's concern for his troops.

- οἱ τοῦ Ἀλεξάνδρου στρατιῶται δι' ὕλης μεγίστης ἐστοράτευον. πολλοὶ δὲ
 διὰ τὴν χιόνα ἤδη ἀπέθανον, καὶ ἀθυμία ἦν τοῖς ἄλλοις. ὁ μέντοι
βασιλεύς. τοὺς πλανήτας συνέλεξα ἐκέλευσεν αὐτοὺς πολλὰ δένδρα
κόψαντας στρατόπεδόν τε καὶ πυρ παρασκευάζειν. καὶ δι' ολίγου ἦν τοῖς
 5 στρατιώταις στρατόπεδόν τε καλὸν καὶ πυρ μέγιστον. καὶ πάντες τὰ
 σώματα ἐγγύς τοῦ πυρὸς θεομαίνον. μετὰ δὲ πολλὰς ὥρας στρατιώτης
 τις τὰ ὅπλα μόλις φέρων εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον ὑπὸ νύκτα εἰσηλθεν
ἡμιθνής. ὁ δ' Ἀλέξανδρος, ἐπεὶ τὸν στρατιώτην εἶδε, τὴν ἔδραν εὐθὺς
 ἔλιπεν. τὰ δὲ ὅπλα ἀπὸ τοῦ στρατιώτου ἀπολαμβάνω, ἐκέλευσεν αὐτὸν ἐγγύς
 10 τοῦ πυρὸς καθίζειν. ὁ οὖν στρατιώτης ἐκάθισεν, οὐκ ἐπιγινώσκων τὸν

	ὕλη-ης ἡ	forest
	στορατεύω ἐστοράτευσα	I march, I make an expedition
	χιών -όνος ἡ	snow
	ἤδη	already
2	ἀθυμία -ας ἡ	despondency, despair
	βασιλεύς ὁ	king
	πλανήτης -ου ὁ	wanderer, straggler
	συνλέγω συνέλεξα	I gather (people/things) together
	κόπτω ἔκοψα	I cut (down)
4	παρασκευάζω παρασκεύασα	I prepare
	δι' ολίγου	soon, in a short time
	ἐγγύς	near (+ gen)
	θεομαίνω	I warm
	μόλις	with difficulty, scarcely
7	ὑπὸ νύκτα	just before nightfall
	εἰσηλθόν	(irreg aor) I came in
	ἡμιθνής	half-dead
	ἔδρα -ας ἡ	seat
	εὐθὺς	immediately
9	ἀπολαμβάνω ἀπέλαβον	I take . . . from
	καθίζω ἐκάθισα	I sit
	ἐπιγινώσκω	I recognise

Ἀλέξανδρον. ὑπνος δ' εὐθύς ἔλαβεν αὐτόν. ὕστερον δ' ἐγρηγορώς
 ὑγιεινός μὲν ἦν, περίφοβος δὲ ὡς ἐν τῇ βασιλικῇ ἐδρᾷ καθίζων· καὶ
 ἤθελε τὴν ἐδραν εὐθύς λείπειν.

ὁ μέντοι Ἀλέξανδρος πᾶσιν εἶπεν, “ἄρα γινώσκετε, ὦ φίλοι, ὅτι ὑμῖν μὲν
 15 ἔστιν ἀγαθὴ τύχη, τοῖς δὲ πολεμίοις κακὴ. ὁ γὰρ τῶν Περσῶν βασιλεὺς,
 εἴ τις ἐν τῇ βασιλικῇ ἐδρᾷ καθίζει, θανάτῳ κολάζει αὐτόν. τῷ οὖν
 βαρβάρῳ θάνατον φέρει ἢ ἐδρᾷ· σοὶ δέ, ὦ στρατιῶτα, βίον τε καὶ
 σωτηρίαν.”

	ὑστερον	later
	ἐγρηγορώς	having woken up
	ὑγιεινός -ή -όν	healthy
	περίφοβος -ον	terrified
12	βασιλικός -ή -όν	royal
	ἐδρα -ας ἢ	seat
	ὅτι	that
	τύχη -ης ἢ	luck, fortune
	πολέμιοι -ων οἱ	enemy (in war)
15	Πέρσαι -ῶν οἱ	Persians
	βασιλεὺς ὁ	king
	εἰ	if
	κολάζω ἐκόλασα	I punish
	βάρβαρος -ου ὁ	barbarian
18	σωτηρία -ας ἢ	safety, deliverance

FUTURE PARTICIPLE

For the large number of verbs that form their future by adding sigma to the stem (e.g. παύω becomes παύσω), the future participle is very simple – putting the present participle endings after the sigma:

		<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	παύσ-ων	παύσ-ουσα	παύσ-ον	about to stop
	<i>acc</i>	παύσ-οντα	παύσ-ουσιν	παύσ-ον	
	<i>gen</i>	παυσ-οντος	παυσ-ούσης	παύσ-οντος	
	<i>dat</i>	παύσ-οντι	παυσ-ούσῃ	παύσ-οντι	
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	παύσ-οντες	παύσ-ουσαι	παύσ-οντα	
	<i>acc</i>	παύσ-οντας	παυσ-ούσας	παύσ-οντα	
	<i>gen</i>	παυσ-όντων	παυσ-ουσῶν	παυσ-όντων	
	<i>dat</i>	παύσ-ουσι(ν)	παυσ-ούσαις	παύσ-ουσι(ν)	

The future participle is thus identical to the present participle, with the insertion of the sigma throughout.

Verbs that make some adjustment to a consonant stem to add the sigma of course do so here too: e.g. διωξων, πεμψων.

- The future participle is thus for many verbs only one letter different from the present participle. Parts of it are also only one letter different from the first (weak) aorist participle (which also of course has the sigma): e.g.

λύσοντες *future*; λύσαντες *first (weak) aorist*.

- The literal meaning of the future participle is (*being*) *about to . . .* but this is rarely good English. As with other participles, translations involving words such as *when*, *while* and *who* are often appropriate (but always with some indication that the action described in the participle is or was *still to happen*). As always, the tense of the participle is *in relation to the tense of the main verb*. Thus a future participle in a sentence with a present main verb may be translated e.g.

when he is going to do X, he does Y
while he is about to do X, he does Y

Similarly, a future participle in a sentence with a past main verb may come out as

when he was going to do X, he did Y
while he was about to do X, he did Y

Like any participle, it can also be used with the article:

οἱ διδάζοντες
those who are/were* going to teach

(*depending on tense of main verb)

- The future participle alone can express an idea of purpose: *about to do X* may well imply *intending* or *aiming* to do it. But this meaning can be specified more clearly by putting *ὥς* (literally *as*) in front of the future participle:

	μανθάνω τοὺς λόγους ὥς διδάξων τοὺς παῖδας.
<i>literally</i>	I am learning the words as being about to teach the children.
<i>i.e.</i>	I am learning the words in order to teach the children.

This is a very common and simple way of expressing purpose.

Exercise 6.34

Translate into English:

- 1 ὁ δοῦλος, τον ἵππον λύσων, βοήν ἤκουσεν.
- 2 ἡ τὴν βίβλον γράψουσα σοφὴ ἐστίν.
- 3 ὁ στρατηγὸς βουλὴν ἔλαβεν ὡς τὴν ναυμαχίαν παύσων.
- 4 ὁ γέρων, τον παιῖδα διδάξων, τοὺς λόγους πρῶτον ἐμαθεν.
- 5 τὴν νίκην τὴν τον πόλεμον παύσουσαν νῦν ἔχομεν.
- 6 οἱ ξένοι ἐνθάδε μένουσιν ὡς τὰ ἱερὰ θαυμάσοντες.
- 7 τίς ἐστίν ὁ τοὺς πολίτας ἀποτρέχειν κελεύσων;
- 8 τὸν στρατὸν τάξοντες, οἱ στρατηγοὶ τοὺς φεύγοντας εἶδον.
- 9 δοῦλον ἔπεμψα ὡς τοὺς παῖδας διώξοντα.
- 10 ποῦ εἰσιν οἱ ναῦται οἱ τον λιμένα φυλάξοντες;

Exercise 6.35

Translate into Greek:

- 1 While he is about to guard the gate, the soldier hears shouts.
- 2 I will send a slave to prevent the danger.
- 3 When he is about to speak, the messenger does not eat.
- 4 The woman who was going to teach the children was waiting for two hours.
- 5 He is running to the river in order to release our horses.



FOCUSING THE SENSE OF PARTICIPLES

We saw above that the future participle alone can express purpose, but that this sense can be specified more clearly by putting ὡς in front of it. This principle – of inserting a word to focus on one of the possible meanings a participle already has – is seen in other contexts too.

- When put in front of a present or aorist participle, ὡς narrows the meaning to *as*, *since* or *on the grounds that*.
- Conversely, καίπερ in front of any participle gives the sense *although* or *despite*. (Participles basically describe *circumstances applying* to whatever happens in the main part of the sentence. Often they are circumstances that cause or explain it – hence translations like *as*, *since* – but they can also be circumstances that might have tended to prevent it.)

Exercise 6.36

Translate into English:

- 1 καίπερ δεινὰ παθών, ἐν τῷ ἀγῶνι μόνος ἔδραμον.
- 2 ἄρα ἔφυγες ἀπὸ τῆς νήσου ὡς περὶ τῶν ἐκεῖ ἀκούσας, ὦ ναῦτα;
- 3 ὁ τῶν πολεμίων ἄρχων στρατὸν ἐπεμψεν ὡς τοὺς ἡμετέρους ἀγροὺς βλάψοντα.
- 4 θαυμάζω τὸν ξένον ὡς πολλοὺς κακοὺς ἀποκτείναντα.
- 5 τὸ ὕδωρ καίπερ κακὸν ὃν πάντες ἐπίομεν ὡς οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἔχοντες.

MORE USES OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE (3)

In Chapter Three we met the particles μέν and δέ, used to express a contrast:

οἱ μὲν ναῦται ἔμειναν, οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται ἐφυγον.
The sailors stayed, but the soldiers ran away.

These particles are also very common with just the definite article, leaving a noun to be understood from the number and gender:

αἱ μὲν ἔμειναν, αἱ δὲ ἐφυγον.
Some (women) stayed, (but) others ran away.

They are also very common with a partitive genitive (as in English *one of, some of*):

οἱ μὲν τῶν δούλων ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ εἰσίν, οἱ δὲ ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ.
Some of the slaves are in the house, others in the street.

τὰς μὲν τῶν βιβλῶν ἀπέβαλον, τὰς δὲ ἔτι ἔχω.
I threw away some of the books, but I still have others.

The same idiom is also found in the singular:

ὁ μὲν τῶν παίδων ἔμεινεν, ὁ δὲ ἐφυγεν.
One of the boys stayed, (but) the other ran away.

Note that before translating the article followed by μέν you must look ahead to see whether there is a noun agreeing with it, or whether the article is being used alone (i.e. as a *pronoun*) in one of the idioms just described.

Exercise 6.37

Translate into English:

- 1 οἱ μὲν τῶν γερόντων σοφοί εἰσιν, οἱ δὲ μῶροι.
- 2 τὴν μὲν τῶν ἐπιστολῶν ἐγὼ ἐγραψα, τὴν δὲ οὐ.
- 3 τῶν δώρων τὰ μὲν ἐλάβομεν, τὰ δὲ ἐλίπομεν.
- 4 διὰ τί τοῖς μὲν τῶν παίδων δεῖπνον παρέσχες, τοῖς δὲ οὐδέν;
- 5 οἱ μὲν τῷ ἀγγέλῳ πιστεύουσιν, οἱ δὲ διώκουσιν αὐτὸν ἐκ τῆς κώμης.

Exercise 6.38

Translate into Greek:

- 1 Some (men) speak, others listen.
- 2 Some of the slaves were running away, but others stayed.
- 3 Some of the gifts are beautiful, others are not.
- 4 I sent some of the boys to the village, others to the harbour.
- 5 One of the girls was guarding the house, the other was running away.



REVISION CHECKPOINT

Make sure you know:

- all present and aorist participles
- numerals (cardinal 1-10 and ordinal 1st-5th)
- expressions of time (accusative, genitive and dative)
- the use of οὐδεὶς
- first and second person plural pronouns and possessives
- the possessive dative
- the future participle, and the uses of ὥς and καίτερ to focus the sense of participles
- the use of the definite article with μέν and δέ

Exercise 6.39

Alexander's Ambition

After conquering Asia Minor, Alexander won a major victory over the Persians at Issus in the north-east corner of the Mediterranean in 333 BC. This was in itself sufficient to avenge their attacks on Greece 150 years earlier. Alexander's refusal of the generous peace terms offered showed however that he now aimed to conquer the whole of the vast Persian empire. Before his second major victory at Gaugamela on the River Tigris in 331, his sacking of the Persian palace at Persepolis, and his more exploratory expedition further east, Alexander paid a formative visit to an oracle in the North African desert.

- ὁ Ἀλέξανδρος ἐν τῇ δια τῆς ἐρημίας ὁδῷ πρὸς τὸ τοῦ Ἀμμωνος μαντεῖον ἦλθεν. τοῖς μὲν γὰρ τῶν ἀνθρώπων ὁ τῶν θεῶν βασιλεὺς καὶ πατὴρ Ζεὺς ἐστὶν ὀνόματι, τοῖς δὲ Ἀμμων ἢ ἄλλος τις. τὸ οὖν τοῦ Διός ὄνομα ἐν τῇ Λιβύῃ Ἀμμων ἐστίν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ Ἀλέξανδρος πρὸς τὸ
- 5 μαντεῖον ἦλθεν, ὁ ἱερεὺς, τὴν γλῶσσαν κακῶς μαθὼν, ἤθελεν Ἑλληνιστί λέγειν αὐτῷ "ὦ παιδίον". οὐ μέντοι "ὦ παιδίον" ὀρθῶς εἶπεν, ἀλλ' "ὦ παιδῖος", ἀντί τοῦ νῦν τὸ σίγμα λέγων. ὁ δ' Ἀλέξανδρος ἐχαίρει διότι ὁ ἱερεὺς, ὡς ἐπίστευεν, εἶπεν αὐτῷ "ὦ παῖ Διός". ἐπεὶ οὖν ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ τῷ ἐπὶ τοὺς Πέρσας ὁ Ἀλέξανδρος νίκην ἔσχεν, ἐκέλευσε τοὺς

	ἐρημία -ας ἡ	desert
	Ἀμμων -ωνος ὁ	Ammon (Egyptian god equated to Zeus)
	μαντεῖον -ου τό	oracle
2	ἦλθον	(irreg aor) I came
	βασιλεὺς ὁ	king
	πατὴρ ὁ	father
	Ζεὺς ὁ	Zeus
	ἢ	or
3	Διός	(irreg gen of Zeus)
	Λιβύη -ης ἡ	Libya (north Africa)
	ἱερεὺς ὁ	priest
	γλῶσσα -ης ἡ	tongue, language
	Ἑλληνιστί	in Greek
6	παιδίον -ου τό	child (diminutive of παῖς, implying small and/or dear)
	ὀρθῶς	correctly
	ἀντί	instead of (+ gen)
	χαίρω	I rejoice, I am happy
9	ἐπὶ	(+ acc) against
	Πέρσαι -ων οἱ	Persians

10 στρατιώτας αὐτὸν ὡς θεὸν προσαγορεύειν. καὶ πολλοὶ τῶν ἐν τῷ στρατῷ
εἰσὶν οἱ ἦσαν τὸν Ἀλέξανδρον οὕτως προσαγορευεῖν. Λακεδαιμόνιος δὲ τις
εἶπε μόνον, "εἰ ὁ Ἀλέξανδρος ἐθέλει θεὸς εἶναι, ἔστω θεός."

	προσαγορεύω	I address
	οὕτως	in this way
	Λακεδαιμόνιος -ου ὁ	Spartan (<i>the Spartans were famous for short but devastating comments</i>)
12	εἰ	if
	εἶναι	to be (<i>infinitive of εἰμί</i>)
	ἔστω	let him be

ROUND-UP OF VERBS AND THEIR AORIST FORMATION

Verbs we have met in this book, with their aorist tense and aorist stem:

<i>present</i>	<i>aorist</i>	<i>aorist stem</i>	<i>meaning</i>
αγγέλλω	ἡγγειλα	ἀγγειλ-	I report, I announce
ἄγω	ἡγαγον	ἀγαγ-	I lead
ακούω	ἡκουσα	ακουσ-	I hear, I listen (to)
αποθνήσκω	ἀπέθανον	ἀποθαν-	I die
ἀποκτείνω	ἀπέκτεινα	ἀποκτειν-	I kill
βάλλω	ἔβαλον	βαλ-	I throw
βλάπτω	ἔβλαψα	βλαψ-	I harm, I damage
γράφω	ἔγραψα	γραψ-	I write
διδάσκω	ἐδίδαξα	διδασ-	I teach
διώκω	ἐδίωξα	διωξ-	I chase, I pursue
ἐθέλω	ἠθέλησα	ἐθελησ-	I wish, I am willing
ἐσθίω	ἔφαγον	φαγ-	I eat
ευρίσκω	ἦύρον	εύρ-	I find
ἔχω	ἔσχον	σχ-	I have
θάπτω	εθαψα	θαψ-	I bury
θαυμάζω	ἐθαύμασα	θαυμασ-	I am amazed (at), I admire
κελεύω	ἐκέλευσα	κελευσ-	I order
κλέπτω	εκλεψα	κλεψ-	I steal
κωλύω	ἐκώλυσα	κωλυσ-	I hinder, I prevent
λαμβάνω	ἔλαβον	λαβ-	I take
λέγω	ἔλεξα	λεξ-	I speak, I say
	<i>or</i>		
λείπω	εἶπον	εἶπ-	I leave
λύω	ἔλυσα	λυσ-	I release
μανθάνω	ἔμαθον	μαθ-	I learn
μένω	εμείνα	μειν-	I stay, I remain; I wait for
παρασκευάζω	παρεσκεύασα	παρασκευασ-	I prepare
παρέχω	παρέσχον	παρασχ-	I produce, I provide
πάσχω	ἔπαθον	παθ-	I suffer
παύω	επαυσα	παυσ-	I stop
πείθω	ἔπεισα	πεισ-	I persuade
πέμπω	επεμψα	πεμψ-	I send
πίνω	επιον	πι-	I drink
πίπτω	επεσον	πεσ-	I fall
πιστεύω	ἐπίστευσα	πιστευσ-	I trust, I believe (+ <i>dat</i>)
τάσσω	ἔταξα	ταξ-	I draw up, I arrange
τρέχω	ἔδραμον	δραμ-	I run
φέρω	ἤνεγκα	ἐνεγκ-	I carry
φεύγω	εφυγον	φυγ-	I run away, I flee
φυλάσσω	ἐφύλαξα	φυλαξ-	I guard

- The aorist is by far the commonest tense of a Greek verb. The aorist stem enables you to form the aorist participle, which also plays a major part in any historical narrative or continuous story set in the past (a very high percentage of passages of course come into this category). Remember that the aorist tense has the augment, but the aorist participle does not. So for example:

<i>verb</i>	<i>aorist tense</i>	<i>aorist participle</i>
πέμπω	επεμψα	πεμψας
βάλλω	εβαλον	βαλών

- Many of the aorists in the list above are predictable. We saw in Chapter Four the important distinction between *first (weak)* and *second (strong)* aorist. To recap, and explain a few exceptions/irregularities:
- (1) *First (weak) aorist* usually adds sigma to the present tense stem, then puts on a set of endings with the characteristic vowel alpha (-α, -ας, -ε[ν], -αμεν, -ατε, -αν). Adding sigma to a stem ending in a consonant such as gamma, kappa or pi (see διδάσκω, διώκω, πέμπω) simply results in writing one of the so-called 'double consonants' (xi or psi). Note however that if the stem ends in lambda or nu (as with αγγέλλω, μένω), something different happens: no sigma is added, but (by way of compensation) the vowel in the stem is lengthened or strengthened into a diphthong:

αγγέλλω	<i>aorist</i> ἤγγειλα
μένω	<i>aorist</i> εμείνα

However ἀποκτείνω has a diphthong in the stem already, which it simply keeps:

ἀποκτείνω	<i>aorist</i> ἀπέκτεινα
-----------	-------------------------

- (2) *Second (strong) aorist* usually shortens or telescopes the present stem, then puts on the same endings as the imperfect tense (-ον, -ες, -ε[ν], -ομεν, -ετε, -ον):

λαμβάνω	<i>aorist</i> ελαβον
---------	----------------------

Sometimes the aorist stem is changed rather more:

πίπτω aorist ἔπεσον

And sometimes it seems completely unrelated:

τρέχω aorist ἔδραμον

The compensation for this complication is that the very irregular forms tend to be very common words, which quickly become familiar.

- Note that λέγω has both a regular first (weak) aorist ἔλεξα *and* an irregular second (strong) aorist εἶπον: the latter is much more commonly found.
- Note that φέρω has an irregular first (weak) aorist ἤνεγκα.
- Excluded from the list above are βαίνω and γινώσκω. They form their aorists in a different way, which will be explained later.
- Compound verbs form their aorist in the same way as the equivalent simple verb. Remember that the aorist tense of a compound has the augment after the prefix (whilst the participle of course does not have the augment at all). So for example:

<i>compound verb</i>		<i>aorist tense</i>	<i>aorist participle</i>
I send towards	προσπέμπω	προσέπεμψα	προσπέμψας
I throw away	αποβάλλω	ἀπέβαλον	ἀποβαλὼν

- We have also met two important second (strong) aorists of irregular verbs of which you have not yet seen the present tense:

<i>aorist tense</i>	<i>aorist stem</i>	
εἶδον	ἰδ-	I saw
ἦλθον	ἐλθ-	I came, I went

Exercise 6.40

Translate into English:

- 1 ὁ ἀπὸ τῆς νήσου ἄγγελος δεινὰ ἡγγεϊλε περὶ των ἐκεῖ.
- 2 ὁ δούλος τὰ ἡμέτερα χρήματα κλέψας πρὸς τὸ πλοῖον ἤνεγκεν.
- 3 οἱ ἐν τῇ κώμῃ ἀπήγαγον τοὺς ἵππους ἀπὸ του πυρός.
- 4 ὁ παῖς καίπερ ἐν τῷ ἀγῶνι πεσὼν μετὰ ὀλίγας ὥρας αὐθις ἔδραμεν.
- 5 οἱ σύμμαχοι ἦλθον ὡς τοὺς ἐν τῷ δεσμοτηρίῳ λύσοντες.
- 6 ἡ τὴν ἐπιστολὴν γράψασα τῇ δευτέρᾳ ἡμέρᾳ ἤρρε τον νεκρόν.
- 7 ἄρα νῦν ἐστὶν ὑμῖν βουλή τις, ὦ πολῖται;
- 8 οἱ μὲν τῶν πολεμίων τοὺς ἀγροὺς ἐβλαψαν, οἱ δὲ τὰς οἰκίας.
- 9 ὁ ξένος τὰ τε ἱερὰ καὶ τὴν ἀγορὰν θαυμάσας τέλος ἀπῆλθεν.
- 10 τίς εἶδε τοὺς τον οἶνον πίνοντας;

Exercise 6.41

Translate into Greek:

- 1 When they had killed many of the enemy, the sailors ate dinner.
- 2 The old man chased the boys out of the field.
- 3 After waiting for three days, the woman who had prepared the plan told the general everything*.
- 4 The slave who had chased my horse finally ran away.
- 5 Although they had guarded the village bravely, the people there did not wait for the army.

* *literally* said all things to the general

Exercise 6.42

Alexander and Dionysus

In making his expedition into the farthest reaches of the then known world, Alexander saw himself as emulating the god Dionysus who in myth had likewise pursued a career of travel and conquest.

ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ Ἀλέξανδρος πρὸς τὴν Νῦσαν προσέβαινεν, οἱ Νυσαῖοι
 ἐξεπεμψαν ἄγγέλους· “ὦ βασιλεῦ, οἱ Νυσαῖοι ἐθέλουσιν ἐλευθεροὶ μένειν.
 σῶζε οὖν τὴν αὐτονομίαν αὐτῶν διὰ τὸν Διόνυσον. ὁ γὰρ θεὸς κτίστης
 5 τῆς Νύσης ἦν. ἐπεὶ γὰρ ἐνίκησε τοὺς Ἰνδοὺς, ἐκτίσε τὴν Νῦσαν ὡς
 μνημεῖον τῆς νίκης τοῖς ἐσομένοις λεῖψων. τῷ δ’ αὐτῷ τόπῳ καὶ σὺ
 αὐτὸς ἐκτίσας τὴν τ’ Ἀλεξάνδοειαν τὴν Ἑσάτην καὶ ἄλλην
 Ἀλεξάνδρειαν ἐν τῇ τῶν Αἰγυπτίων γῇ, καὶ ἄλλας πολλὰς· τὰς μὲν
 ἐκτίσας ἤδη, τὰς δὲ κτίσεις ἀνὰ χρόνον. αἰεὶ δ’ ἐλευθέραν τὴν Νῦσαν
 ἔχομεν, διὰ τὴν αὐτονομίαν πολιτεύοντες ἐν κόσμῳ. ἔστι δὲ καὶ

	Νυσα -ης ἡ	Nysa (<i>city in northern India [modern Pakistan]; exact location uncertain</i>)
	Νυσαῖοι -ων οἱ	people of Nysa
	βασιλεὺς (voc βασιλεῦ) ὁ	king
3	σῶζω	I save, I preserve
	αὐτονομία -ας ἡ	independence
	Διόνυσος -ου ὁ	Dionysus (<i>god of wine, the theatre and ecstatic experience</i>)
	κτίστης -ου ὁ	founder
4	νικάω ἐνίκησα	I conquer, I beat
	Ἰνδοί -ων οἱ	Indians
	κτίζω ἐκτίσα	I found, I establish
	μνημεῖον -ου τὸ	memorial, monument
	τοῖς ἐσομένοις	to those yet to be, to future
5	τρόπος -ου ὁ	way
	καί	(<i>here and in line 9</i>) also
	Ἀλεξάνδρεια -ας ἡ	Alexandria
	ἐσχατος -η -ον	farthest (<i>here as proper name, of the most distant of the thirty cities Alexander founded [in modern Tajikistan]</i>)
6	Αἰγύπτιοι -ων οἱ	Egyptians
	ἤδη	already
8	ἀνὰ χρόνον	in due course
	πολιτεύω	I govern
	κόσμος -ου ὁ	order

- 10 τεκμήριόν τι τοῦ Διονύσου την Νῦσαν κτίσαντος· κισσός γὰρ οὐκ ἄλλη τῆς των Ἰνδῶν γῆς ἀλλ' ἐνθάδε μόνον θάλλει."

τοὺς οὖν των ἀγγέλων λόγους ἠδέως ἀκούσας ὁ Ἀλέξανδρος ἐκέλευσε τὸν τῆς Νύσης ἀρχοντα τετρακοσίους των ἀοίστων πέμπειν ὡς στρατιώτας. ὁ δ' ἀρχων εἶπεν, "οὐχ οἰοί τ' ἐσμέν την Νῦσαν ἐν κόσμῳ

- 15 πολιτεύειν εἰ πλείστοι ἄριστοι ἄπεισιν. ἅπαγε οὖν ἀντί των τετρακοσίων ἀριστων διπλασίους των κακῶν. οὕτως οὖν κατελθὼν εὐρήσεις τὴν Νῦσαν ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ κόσμῳ οὖσαν."

	τεκμήριον -ου τό	piece of evidence, proof
	κισσός -οῦ ὁ	ivy (<i>sacred to Dionysus, and worn in garlands by his worshippers</i>)
	ἄλλη	elsewhere
11	θάλλω	I flourish
	ἠδέως	gladly
	τετρακόσιοι -αι -α	four hundred
	ἄριστος -η -ον	best, excellent
	κόσμος -ου ὁ	order
15	εἰ	if
	πλείστοι -αι -α	very many
	ἀντι	instead of (+ <i>gen</i>)
	διπλασίοι -αι -α	twice as many
	οὕτως	in this way
16	κατηλθον	(<i>irregular aorist</i>) I returned

Exercise 6.43**Alexander, Homer and Fame**

Figure 6.3 Detail from the Alexander Mosaic, which depicts the Battle of Issus between Alexander the Great and Darius III in 333 BC. (Photo by Roman/via Getty Images.)

As we saw in Exercise 6.11, Alexander claimed descent *from* Achilles. He modelled his behaviour on that of the Homeric hero.

- ὁ Ἀλέξανδρος ἐτι παῖς ὢν τὴν Ἰλιάδα πολλάκις ἀνεγίνωσκεν. ἦν δ' αὐτῷ ἐπωνυμία "Ἀχιλλεύς". ἦν δὲ καὶ τῷ διδασκάλῳ αὐτοῦ ἐπωνυμία "Χείρων", διότι ὁ κένταυρος τὸν Ἀχιλλέα ἐπαίδευσεν. ἐπεὶ δὲ βασιλεὺς καὶ στρατηγός ἦν, ὁ Ἀλέξανδρος τὴν τ' Ἰλιάδα μετὰ τοῦ ἐγχειριδίου αἰεὶ ὑπὸ τῷ προσκεφαλαίῳ εἶχεν. καὶ τοὺς Πέρσας ἐν μάχῃ τοέψας ἐλαβε πολλὰ ἄθλα καὶ θήκην τινα τοῦ Δαρείου τιμίαν οὖσαν· καὶ ἐν τῇ θήκῃ τὴν Ἰλιάδα ἐφύλασεν. καὶ ἐπεὶ εἰσέδραμέ ποτε ἄγγελός τις μετέωρος, ὁ Ἀλέξανδρος εἶπεν αὐτῷ, "διὰ τί οὕτω μετέωρος εἶ; ἄρα Ὅμηρος αὖθις ἐμψυχός ἐστιν;" τὸν γὰρ Ἀχιλλέα ἐμακάριζε διότι Ὅμηρος περὶ αὐτοῦ ἦδεν. καὶ ποιητὴς τις κακὸς τῷ Ἀλεξάνδρῳ ποτὲ εἶπε, "ποίημα περὶ σοῦ γράψω ὥσπερ Ὅμηρος περὶ Ἀχιλλέως." ὁ δ' Ἀλέξανδρος ὑπέλαβε.

	Ἰλιάς -άδος ἡ	the <i>Iliad</i>
	ἀναγινώσκω	I read
	ἐπωνυμία -ας ἡ	nickname
	Ἀχιλλεύς -έως ὁ	Achilles
2	καί	(<i>here</i>) also
	Χείρων -ωνος ὁ	Cheiron (<i>unusually kindly and wise centaur, tutor of Achilles and other heroes</i>)
	κένταυρος -ου ὁ	centaur (<i>mythical creature: horse with man's head and shoulders</i>)
3	παιδεύω ἐπαίδευσα	I train, I educate
	βασιλεὺς ὁ	king
	ἐγχειρίδιον -ου τό	dagger
	ὑπὸ	(+ <i>dat</i>) under
	προσκεφάλαιον -ου τό	pillow
5	Πέρσαι -ῶν οἱ	Persians
	τρέπω ἔτρεψα	I rout, I cause to run away
	θήκη -ης ἡ	chest
	Δάρειος -ου ὁ	Darius (<i>the Third, king of Persia</i>)
	τίμιος -α -ον	valuable
7	ποτε	once ('indefinite' use, not asking a question)
	μετέωρος -ον	excited
	οὕτω	so
	Ὅμηρος -ου ὁ	Homer
	αὖθις	again
9	ἐμψυχος -ον	alive
	μακαρίζω	I envy, I regard (someone) as fortunate
	ᾶδω <i>imperfect</i> ἦδον	I sing
	ποίημα -ατος τό	poem
	ὥσπερ	just like
11	ὑπολαμβάνω ὑπέλαβον	I reply

“μαλλον ἐθέλω Θερσίτης ἐν τῇ Ιλιάδι εἶναι ἢ Ἀγαμέμνων ἐν τῷ σῶ ποιήματι.” ὁ δὲ Καλλισθένης, λογογράφος τις περὶ τοῦ Ἀλεξάνδρου γράψας, εἶπεν, “ἐν ἐμοὶ ἐστὶν ἢ τοῦ Ἀλεξάνδρου δόξα.” πολλοὶ μέντοι
 15 καὶ τότε καὶ ὕστερον περὶ τοῦ Ἀλεξάνδρου ἐγραψαν. καὶ λέγουσιν ὅτι ναῦται φωνὴν τινα δεινὴν ενίστε ἀκούουσι, “ποῦ ἐστὶν ὁ Ἀλέξανδρος ὁ μέγας,” λέγουσαν. καὶ ἀντιλέγουσιν. “ὁ Ἀλέξανδρος ἐμψυχός ἐστι καὶ βασιλεύει.”

	μαλλον	rather, more
	Θερσίτης ὁ	Thersites (a ridiculous and despicable common soldier in the Iliad)
12	εἶναι	to be (<i>infinitive of εἰμί</i>)
	ἢ	than
	Ἀγαμέμνων ὁ	Agamemnon (supreme commander of the Greek forces in the Iliad)
	Καλλισθένης ὁ	Callisthenes
	λογογράφος -ου ὁ	historian
14	δόξα -ης ἢ	glory, reputation
	τότε	then, at that time
	ὕστερον	later
	ὅτι	that
	ενίστε	sometimes
17	μέγας	great
	ἀντιλέγω	I say in reply
	βασιλεύω	I reign, I am king

REVISION CHECKPOINT

Make sure you know:

- regular and irregular aorists
- the various ways in which aorists are formed
- how the aorist participle is formed from the aorist stem

SUMMARY OF CHAPTER SIX GRAMMAR

Present participle (2)

The present participle παυών -ουσα -ον (*stopping*) is third declension in the masculine and neuter (genitive stem παυοντ-). It is first declension in the feminine, adding -ουσα to the basic verb stem and declining like θάλασσα. The present participle of *to be* is ὢν οὔσα ὄν (m/n stem ὄντ-).

More uses of the definite article (1)

The article can be used with an adjective (e.g. οἱ σοφοί = *the wise, wise men*) or with a participle (e.g. οἱ τρέχοντες = *those running, the runners*). If the participle has an object or a preposition phrase with it, this is sandwiched (e.g. οἱ τὸν ἵππον διώκοντες = *the people chasing the horse*).

More uses of the definite article (2)

The article can be used on its own (i.e. without a noun) with an adverb (e.g. οἱ πάλαι = *people of long ago*) or with a preposition phrase (e.g. αἱ ἐν τῇ κώμῃ = *the women in the village*).

The uses of αὐτός (1)

αὐτός -ή -ό declines like σοφός (but with n nom/acc sg -ό, not -όν). It has three meanings:

- 1 *self* when used with article + noun but not sandwiched, e.g. ὁ στρατηγός αὐτός = *the general himself*;
- 2 *same* when sandwiched with article + noun, e.g. ὁ αὐτός στρατηγός = *the same general*;
- 3 *him, her, it, pl them* when used on its own and not in the nominative, e.g. διδάσκομεν αὐτούς = *we teach them*.

The uses of αὐτός (2)

- 1 αὐτός = *self* is not necessarily third person: in the nominative it agrees with the subject of the verb, e.g. αὐτοὶ παρῆμεν = *we ourselves were present*.
- 2 αὐτός = *same* can be used with the article alone, e.g. ὁ αὐτός = *the same man* (the meaning must always be *same* if αὐτός comes straight after the article);
- 3 αὐτόν etc alone and not in the nominative is always a pronoun (e.g. *him*) and always third person, e.g. εἶδομεν αὐτούς = *we saw them*.

Aorist participle (1)

The first aorist participle παύσας (*having stopped*) declines in the masculine like the third declension noun γίγας, with neuter variant παῦσαν. Its first feminine παύσασα is first declension, adding -ασ- to the aorist stem and declining like θάλασσα. Both present and aorist participles are thus 3-1-3 (short for 3m - 1f - 3n) in declension.

The aorist participle normally refers to an action that has already happened when the action described in the main verb of the sentence takes place. It is usually best translated with a clause, and if the main narrative is in the past, this comes out as a pluperfect in English (e.g. *when they had . . .*).

The adjective πᾶς

πᾶς (*all, every*) is 3-1-3 in declension (m/n gen stem παντ-), like a first aorist participle. It is normally used with the article but does not sandwich, e.g. πάντες οἱ πολῖται = *all the citizens*. It can also be used as a pronoun e.g. πάντες ἐφυγον = *everyone ran away*. In the singular without the article πᾶς means *every*.

Aorist participle (2)

Verbs with a second aorist form the aorist participle by putting the endings of the present participle onto the aorist stem, e.g. λαβῶν -οὔσα -ον (*having taken*, m/n gen stem λαβοντ-), again 3-1-3 in declension.

Numerals

Cardinal numbers 1-10, and the forms of the small ones (1-4) that decline. Ordinal numbers first-fifth.

Expressing time (2)

Time within which is expressed by the genitive, e.g. τριῶν ἡμερῶν = *within three days*.

Time when is expressed by the dative, e.g. τῇ τετάρτῃ ἡμέρᾳ = *on the fourth day*.

The use of οὐδεὶς

οὐδεὶς (*no-one, nothing, no . . .*) can be used as a pronoun, or as an adjective with a noun.

Personal pronouns and adjectives (first and second person plural)

The plural of ἐγώ (*I*) is ἡμεῖς (*we*), with associated adjective ἡμέτερος -α -ον (*our*).

The plural of σύ (*you* sg) is ὑμεῖς (*you* pl), with associated adjective ὑμέτερος -α -ον (*your, of you* pl).

Possessive dative

For a sentence describing possession, as well as e.g. βουλὴν εχομεν for *we have a plan*, it is possible (and common) to say βουλὴ ἐστὶν ἡμῖν (lit *there is to us a plan*).

Future participle

For verbs that form their future tense by adding sigma to the stem (then person ending), the future participle likewise adds sigma, then uses the same 3-1-3 endings as the present participle, e.g. παύσων -οὔσα -όν (m/n gen stem παυσοντ-). Literally *about to stop*, it is better translated by a clause. Its tense is in relation to that of the main verb, so in a past narrative it comes out as a 'future in the past' e.g. *when they were about to . . .*. The future participle (often preceded by ὥς) can be used to express purpose.

Focusing the sense of participles

ὥς with a present or aorist participle focuses the meaning to *as, since, on the grounds that*; καίπερ with any participle means *although* or *despite*.

More uses of the definite article (3)

The contrasting particles μέν . . . δέ when used with the article mean *some . . . others*, e.g. οἱ μὲν μένουσιν, οἱ δέ φεύγουσιν = *some people stay, others run away*.

Round-up of verbs and their aorist formation

List of all verbs met, with aorist (first or second) and aorist stem.

CHAPTER SIX VOCABULARY

ἀγγέλλω ἡγγεῖλα	I report, I announce
αὐθις	again
αὐτός -ή -ό	self; same; (<i>not nom</i>) him, her, it
εἶναι	to be (<i>infinitive of εἰμι</i>)
εὐθύς	immediately
ἐχθρός -οῦ ό	(personal) enemy
Ζεὺς Διός ό	Zeus
ἦλθον	(<i>irregular aorist</i>) I came, I went
ἡμεῖς	we
ἡμέτερος -α -ον	our
θάπτω ἔθαψα	I bury
καίπερ	although, despite (being) (+ <i>participle</i>)
μάχη -ης ή	battle
νεκρός -οῦ ό	corpse, dead body
ολίγος -η -ον	a little, a small amount (of)
οὐδεις οὐδεμία οὐδέν (οὐδεν-)	no-one, nothing, no (<i>i.e.</i> not any)
πάλαι	long ago, in the past
παρασκευάζω παρασκευάσα	I prepare, get (something) ready
πας πᾶσα παν (παντ-)	all, every
περί	(+ <i>gen</i>) about, concerning
πολέμιοι -ων οἱ	enemy (<i>in war</i>)
συλλέγω συνέλεξα	I collect, I gather
τέλος	finally
τόπος -ου ό	place
ὕδωρ -ατος τό	water
ὕμεῖς	you (<i>pl</i>)
ὕμετερος -α -ον	your (of you <i>pl</i>)
χρήματα -ων τά	money
ὥς	(+ <i>future participle</i>) in order to; (+ <i>present or aorist participle</i>) as, since, because, on the grounds that
εις μία ἓν (έν-)	one
δύο	two
τρεις τρία	three
τέσσαρες τεσσαρα	four
πέντε	five
ἕξ	six
επτά	seven
οκτώ	eight
εννέα	nine
δέκα	ten
πρῶτος -η -ον	first
δεύτερος -α -ον	second
τρίτος -η -ον	third
τέταρτος -η -ον	fourth
πέμπτος -η -ον	fifth

ENGLISH–GREEK PRACTICE SENTENCES

RESTRICTED ACCIDENCE AND SYNTAX FOR OPTIONAL GCSE ENGLISH–GREEK SENTENCES

Accidence

The forms of regular verbs in -ω in the present and imperfect indicative active, and the aorist indicative active of verbs in the vocabulary list for this section of the paper.

The present active infinitive of regular verbs in -ω.

The present and imperfect indicative of the verb εἰμί (I am).

The forms of the definite article.

The forms of regular nouns of the types φωνή / τιμή, χώρα, θάλασσα, πολίτης / ναύτης, νεανίας, έργον / δώρον.

The forms of regular adjectives of the types αγαθός / σοφός and ανδρεῖος / μικρός (excluding their comparative and superlative forms).

Syntax

Standard uses of the cases.

The cases taken by prepositions in the vocabulary list for this section of the paper.

Direct statements and direct questions.

RESTRICTED VOCABULARY LIST FOR OPTIONAL GCSE ENGLISH-GREEK SENTENCES

(The list given here excludes a handful of words not met in Part 1; the complete list is given in Part 2)

αγαθός	δῶρον	κελεύω	οὐ / οὐκ / οὐχ
αγγέλλω	ἐθέλω	κίνδυνος	πείθω
αγγελος	εἰμί	λαμβάνω	πέμπω
αγορά	εἰς (+ <i>acc</i>)	λέγω	πίνω
αγρός	ἐκ / ἐξ (+ <i>gen</i>)	λείπω	πίπτω
ἄγω	ἐν (+ <i>dat</i>)	λίθος	πολίτης
αεί	ἐπιστολή	λόγος	πολλάκις
ἄθλον	ἔργον	μανθάνω	πολλοί
ἀκούω	ἐσθίω	μάχη	ποταμός
ἀνδρεῖος	ευθύς	μένω	πρός (+ <i>acc</i>)
ἀνθρωπος	εὐρίσκω	μῶρος	πύλη
ἀπό (+ <i>gen</i>)	ἔχω	νεανίας	σοφός
ἄρα;	ἡμέρα	νέος	στρατηγός
βαίνω	θάλασσα	νῆσος	στρατιώτης
βάλλω	θαυμάζω	νόμος	τρέχω
βίβλος	θεά	νυν	φέρω
βοή	θεός	ξένος	φεύγω
γινώσκω	θύρα	ὁ, ἡ, τό	φίλος
γράφω	ιερόν	ὁδός	φυλάσσω
δεινός	ἵππος	οἰκία	φωνή
διότι	καί	οἶνος	χαλεπός
διώκω	κακός	ολίγοι	χώρα
δοῦλος	καλός	ὄπλα	

Exercise EG.1

- | | | |
|---|-----------------------------------|-----|
| 1 | The messenger hears a shout. | [3] |
| 2 | We always admired the temple. | [3] |
| 3 | I drink wine in the market-place. | [4] |

Exercise EG.2

- | | | |
|---|------------------------------------|-----|
| 1 | I have many books. | [3] |
| 2 | The stupid slave was running away. | [3] |
| 3 | The horse was in the field. | [4] |

Exercise EG.3

- 1 I wish to find the letter. [3]
- 2 We have few friends. [3]
- 3 Was the goddess beautiful? [4]

Exercise EG.4

- 1 The citizens admire the laws. [3]
- 2 I was learning the new words. [3]
- 3 The general leads many soldiers. [4]

Exercise EG.5

- 1 I ordered the citizens to wait. [3]
- 2 We were chasing the wicked slave. [3]
- 3 The messengers always find the road. [4]

Exercise EG.6

- 1 We sent fine gifts. [3]
- 2 I was persuading the citizens to run away. [3]
- 3 Do you admire the wise general? [4]

Exercise EG.7

- 1 The battle was terrible. [3]
- 2 I immediately wrote a letter. [3]
- 3 The brave soldiers have prizes. [4]

Exercise EG.8

- 1 They are going into the market-place. [3]
- 2 They were waiting for a few days. [3]
- 3 We were leaving gifts in the temple. [4]

Exercise EG.9

- 1 We hear strange words. [3]
- 2 The work was difficult. [3]
- 3 The house has many doors. [4]

Exercise EG.10

- 1 We have good laws. [3]
- 2 The soldiers were guarding the gate. [3]
- 3 Are you running towards the sea? [4]

Exercise EG.11

- 1 I am going out of the house. [3]
- 2 The slave was throwing stones. [3]
- 3 We heard shouts in the market-place. [4]

Exercise EG.12

- 1 The soldier is brave. [3]
- 2 The young man was chasing the slave. [3]
- 3 Are you drinking the new wine? [4]

Exercise EG.13

- 1 We have a new house. [3]
- 2 The battle was difficult. [3]
- 3 The slave fell into the river. [4]

Exercise EG.14

- 1 The general announces the prize. [3]
- 2 Did you send a letter? [3]
- 3 I wish to go away from the island. [4]

Exercise EG.15

- 1 Are you writing a book? [3]
- 2 The stranger immediately ran away. [3]
- 3 I am running because I am in danger. [4]

Exercise EG.16

- 1 The goddess has a temple. [3]
- 2 We took the new horses. [3]
- 3 Was the slave carrying the gifts? [4]

Exercise EG.17

- 1 I wish to persuade the citizens. [3]
- 2 We were waiting for many days. [3]
- 3 The soldiers have new weapons. [4]

Exercise EG.18

- 1 I am now learning the work. [3]
- 2 The road was difficult. [3]
- 3 The country has strange customs. [4]

Exercise EG.19

- 1 We hear the voice of the god. [3]
- 2 I was ordering the young men to wait. [3]
- 3 The horse ran into the sea. [4]

Exercise EG.20

- 1 We are eating and drinking. [3]
- 2 The friends were guarding the door. [3]
- 3 Does the field have a gate? [4]

REFERENCE GRAMMAR

THE DEFINITE ARTICLE

		<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	ὁ	ἡ	τό	<i>the</i>
	<i>acc</i>	τόν	τήν	τό	
	<i>gen</i>	τοῦ	τῆς	τοῦ	
	<i>dat</i>	τῷ	τῇ	τῷ	
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	οἱ	αἱ	τά	
	<i>acc</i>	τούς	τάς	τά	
	<i>gen</i>	τῶν	τῶν	τῶν	
	<i>dat</i>	τοῖς	ταῖς	τοῖς	

NOUNS

First declension

Pattern of endings for singular:

<i>nom</i>	-η	or	-α	(adds -ς if masculine)
<i>acc</i>	-ην	or	-αν	
<i>gen</i>	-ης	or	-ας	(changes to -ου if masculine)
<i>dat</i>	-ῃ	or	-α	

All plurals are -αι, -ας, -ων, -αις

		<i>feminine:</i>			<i>masculine:</i>	
		honour	country	sea	sailor	young man
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	τιμ-η	χωρ-α	θάλασσ-α	ναυτ-ης	νεανί-ας
	<i>acc</i>	τιμ-ην	χωρ-αν	θάλασσ-αν	ναυτ-ην	νεανι-αν
	<i>gen</i>	τιμ-ης	χωρ-ας	θαλάσσ-ης	ναυτ-ου	νεανι-ου
	<i>dat</i>	τιμ-ῇ	χωρ-α	θαλάσσ-ῃ	ναύτ-η (<i>voc</i> ναῦτ-α)	νεανι-α (<i>voc</i> νεανί-α)
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	τιμ-αί	χωρ-αι	θαλασσ-αι	ναῦτ-αι	νεανι-αι
	<i>acc</i>	τιμ-ας	χωρ-ας	θαλάσσ-ας	ναυτ-ας	νεανί-ας
	<i>gen</i>	τιμ-ων	χωρ-ων	θαλασσ-ων	ναυτ-ῶν	νεανι-ῶν
	<i>dat</i>	τιμ-αῖς	χωρ-αις	θαλάσσ-αις	ναύτ-αις	νεανι-αις

Second declension

		<i>masculine:*</i>	<i>neuter:</i>
		word	gift
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	λόγ-ος	δωρ-ον
	<i>acc</i>	λόγ-ον	δῶρ-ον
	<i>gen</i>	λόγ-ου	δῶρ-ου
	<i>dat</i>	λόγ-ω (νοσ λόγ-ε)	δῶρ-ω
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	λόγ-οι	δωρ-α
	<i>acc</i>	λόγ-ους	δῶρ-α
	<i>gen</i>	λόγ-ων	δῶρ-ων
	<i>dat</i>	λόγ-οις	δῶρ-οις

* feminine nouns such as βιβλος = *book* are identical in declension

Third declension (pattern of endings)

<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	(wide range of possibilities)	
	<i>acc</i>	stem + α	for masc and fem; same as nom if neuter
	<i>gen</i>	stem + ος	
	<i>dat</i>	stem + ι	
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	stem + ες	for masc and fem; stem + α if neuter
	<i>acc</i>	stem + ας	for masc and fem; stem + α if neuter
	<i>gen</i>	stem + ων	
	<i>dat</i>	stem + σι(ν)*	

* movable nu is added if the next word begins with a vowel, or at the end of a sentence

Third declension (examples)

sg	nom	φυλαξ	guard (stem φυλακ-)
	acc	φυλακ-α	
	gen	φύλακ-ος	
	dat	φυλακ-ι	
pl	nom	φυλακ-ες	<i>dat pl represents φυλακ-σι(ν)</i>
	acc	φύλακ-ας	
	gen	φυλακ-ων	
	dat	φυλαξι(ν)	
sg	nom	γέρων	old man (stem γεροντ-) (voc γέρον)
	acc	γεροντ-α	
	gen	γέροντ-ος	
	dat	γέροντ-ι	
pl	nom	γεροντ-ες	<i>dat pl represents γεροντ-σι(ν)</i>
	acc	γεροντ-ας	
	gen	γερόντ-ων	
	dat	γέρουσι(ν)	
sg	nom	γίγας	giant (stem γιγαντ-)
	acc	γίγαντ-α	
	gen	γίγαντ-ος	
	dat	γίγαντ-ι	
pl	nom	γίγαντ-ες	<i>dat pl represents γιγαντ-σι(ν)</i>
	acc	γίγαντ-ας	
	gen	γιγάντ-ων	
	dat	γίγασι(ν)	

These three examples are all masculine, but feminine nouns e.g. νύξ, νυκτός (stem νυκτ-) = *night* decline in the same way.

Third declension neuter noun:

sg	nom	σώμα	body (stem σωματ-)
	acc	σώμα	
	gen	σώματ-ος	
	dat	σώματ-ι	
pl	nom	σώματ-α	<i>dat pl represents σωματ-σι(ν)</i>
	acc	σώματ-α	
	gen	σώματ-ων	
	dat	σώμασι(ν)	

ADJECTIVES

σοφός = wise

		<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	σοφ-ός	σοφ-ή	σοφ-όν
	<i>acc</i>	σοφ-όν	σοφ-ήν	σοφ-όν
	<i>gen</i>	σοφ-οῦ	σοφ-ῆς	σοφ-οῦ
	<i>dat</i>	σοφ-ῷ	σοφ-ῇ	σοφ-ῷ
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	σοφ-οί	σοφ-αί	σοφ-ά
	<i>acc</i>	σοφ-ούς	σοφ-άς	σοφ-ά
	<i>gen</i>	σοφ-ῶν	σοφ-ῶν	σοφ-ῶν
	<i>dat</i>	σοφ-οῖς	σοφ-αῖς	σοφ-οῖς

This is exactly the same as λόγος, τιμή and δῶρον.

As with the nouns, there is a variant form of the feminine singular if the stem ends with epsilon, iota or rho:

μικρός = small

<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	μικρ-ά
	<i>acc</i>	μικρ-άν
	<i>gen</i>	μικρ-ᾶς
	<i>dat</i>	μικρ-ᾷ

This is exactly the same as the singular of χώρα.

The adjective πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν (παντ-) = *all* declines like the first (weak) aorist participle.

PRONOUNS

τις

In a question, and with an acute accent on the iota:

		<i>masculine/feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	τις	τι	who? which? what?
	<i>acc</i>	τιν-α	τι	
	<i>gen</i>	τιν-ος	τιν-ος	
	<i>dat</i>	τιν-ι	τιν-ι	
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	τιν-ες	τιν-α	
	<i>acc</i>	τιν-ας	τιν-α	
	<i>gen</i>	τιν-ων	τιν-ων	
	<i>dat</i>	τισι(ν)*	τισι(ν)*	

* contracted from τιν-σι(ν) to aid pronunciation

Elsewhere, usually without an accent, or with an accent on the second syllable:

		<i>masculine/feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	τις	τι	a (certain), some (one/thing)
	<i>acc</i>	τιν-α	τι	
	<i>gen</i>	τιν-ος	τιν-ος	
	<i>dat</i>	τιν-ι	τιν-ι	
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	τιν-ες	τιν-α	
	<i>acc</i>	τιν-ας	τιν-α	
	<i>gen</i>	τιν-ων	τιν-ων	
	<i>dat</i>	τισι(ν)*	τισι(ν)*	

* contracted from τιν-σι(ν) to aid pronunciation

αὐτός

Three uses and meanings:

- (1) self (*not sandwiched if used with article and noun*)
 (2) (the) same (*coming immediately after the article*)
 (3) him, her, it, them (*pronoun, not used in the nominative*)

		<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>
sg	<i>nom</i>	αὐτ-ός	αὐτ-ή	αὐτ-ό
	<i>acc</i>	αὐτ-όν	αὐτ-ήν	αὐτ-ό
	<i>gen</i>	αὐτ-οῦ	αὐτ-ῆς	αὐτ-ου
	<i>dat</i>	αὐτ-ῷ	αὐτ-ῇ	αὐτ-ῷ
pl	<i>nom</i>	αὐτ-οῖ	αὐτ-αί	αὐτ-α
	<i>acc</i>	αὐτ-οὺς	αὐτ-άς	αὐτ-α
	<i>gen</i>	αὐτ-ῶν	αὐτ-ῶν	αὐτ-ῶν
	<i>dat</i>	αὐτ-οῖς	αὐτ-αῖς	αὐτ-οῖς

οὐδείς

	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	
<i>nom</i>	οὐδεῖς	οὐδεμία	οὐδέν	no-one, nothing, no (= not any)
<i>acc</i>	οὐδένα	οὐδεμίαν	οὐδέν	(<i>m/n stem</i> οὐδεν-)
<i>gen</i>	οὐδενός	οὐδεμιᾶς	οὐδενός	
<i>dat</i>	οὐδενί	οὐδεμιᾷ	οὐδενί	

First and second person pronouns:

<i>nom</i>	ἐγώ	I
<i>acc</i>	ἐμέ, με	
<i>gen</i>	ἐμοῦ, μου	
<i>dat</i>	ἐμοί, μοι	
<i>nom</i>	ἡμεῖς	we
<i>acc</i>	ἡμᾶς	
<i>gen</i>	ἡμῶν	
<i>dat</i>	ἡμῖν	
<i>nom</i>	σύ	you (sg)
<i>acc</i>	σέ	
<i>gen</i>	σου	
<i>dat</i>	σοί	
<i>nom</i>	ὕμεῖς	you (pl)
<i>acc</i>	ὕμᾶς	
<i>gen</i>	ὕμῶν	
<i>dat</i>	ὕμῖν	

NUMERAL DECLENSIONS

	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	
<i>nom</i>	εἰς	μία	ἓν	one
<i>acc</i>	ένα	μίαν	ἓν	
<i>gen</i>	ενός	μιας	ενός	
<i>dat</i>	ἐνί	μια	ἐνί	
	<i>all genders</i>			
<i>nom</i>	δύο			two
<i>acc</i>	δύο			
<i>gen</i>	δυοῖν			
<i>dat</i>	δυοιν			
	<i>mascl/fem</i>		<i>neuter</i>	
<i>nom</i>	τρεις		τρία	three
<i>acc</i>	τρεις		τρία	
<i>gen</i>	τριῶν		τριῶν	
<i>dat</i>	τρισί(ν)		τρισί(ν)	
	<i>mascl/fem</i>		<i>neuter</i>	
<i>nom</i>	τέσσαρες		τέσσαρα	four
<i>acc</i>	τέσσαρας		τέσσαρα	
<i>gen</i>	τεσσάρων		τεσσάρων	
<i>dat</i>	τέσσαρσι(ν)		τέσσαρσι(ν)	

PREPOSITIONS

	<i>+ accusative</i>	<i>+ genitive</i>	<i>+ dative</i>
ἀπό		from	
διά	on account of	through	
εἰς	into		
ἐκ (ἐξ*)		out of	
ἐν			in
μετά	after	with	
περί		about	
πρός	to, towards		

* before a word starting with a vowel

VERBS

Overview of tenses

<i>present</i>	<i>sg</i>	<i>pl</i>
1	παύ-ω	παύ-ομεν
2	παυ-εις	παύ-ετε
3	παύ-ει	παύ-ουσι(ν)
<i>imperative (sg)</i>	παῦε, (<i>pl</i>)	<i>infinitive</i> παύειν
<i>future</i>		
1	παυσ-ω	παύσ-ομεν
2	παύσ-εις	παύσ-ετε
3	παυσ-ει	παύσ-ουσι(ν)
<i>imperfect</i>		
1	ἐ-παυ-ον	ἐ-παυ-ομεν
2	ἐ-παυ-εις	ἐ-παύ-ετε
3	ἐ-παυ-ε(ν)	ἐ-παυ-ον
<i>first (weak) aorist</i>		
1	ἔ-παυσ-α	ἔ-παύσ-αμεν
2	ἔ-παυσ-ας	ε-παύσ-ατε
3	ἔ-παυσ-ε(ν)	ε-παυσ-αν
<i>second (strong) aorist</i>		
1	ἐ-λάβ-ον	ἐ-λάβ-ομεν
2	ἐ-λάβ-εις	ἐ-λάβ-ετε
3	ἐ-λάβ-ε(ν)	ε-λάβ-ον

The verb *to be*

<i>present</i>		
1	εἰμί	ἐσμέν
2	εἶ	ἐστέ
3	ἐστί(ν)	εἰσί(ν)
<i>imperfect</i>		
1	ἦ (or ἦν)	ἦμεν
2	ἦσθα	ἦτε
3	ἦν	ἦσαν

participle ὢν οὔσα ὄν (*m/n stem* ὄντ-) *infinitive* εἶναι
(like the endings of an ordinary present participle: see next page)

PARTICIPLES

Present, future, and second (strong) aorist participles all use the same endings.
Here is the present participle:

stopping		<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	παύ-ων	παυ-ουσ-α	παῦ-ον
	<i>acc</i>	παύ-οντα	παύ-ουσ-αν	παῦ-ον
	<i>gen</i>	παυ-οντος	παυ-ούσ-ης	παύ-οντος
	<i>dat</i>	παύ-οντι	παυ-ούσ-η	παύ-οντι
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	παύ-οντες	παύ-ουσ-αι	παύ-οντα
	<i>acc</i>	παύ-οντας	παυ-ούσ-ας	παύ-οντα
	<i>gen</i>	παυ-όντων	παυ-ουσ-ῶν	παυ-όντων
	<i>dat</i>	παύ-ουσι(ν)	παυ-ούσ-αις	παύ-ουσι(ν)

From this it is easy to form the future participle:

about to stop

παύσων	παύσουσα	παυσον
<i>stem (for masc and neut): παυσοντ-</i>		

And the second (strong) aorist participle (for verbs with a second [strong] aorist):

having taken

λαβών	λαβοῦσα	λαβόν
<i>stem (for masc and neut): λαβοντ-</i>		

The first (weak) aorist participle (for verbs with a first [weak] aorist) is a little different, but works on the same principle (3-1-3 declensions), and – like the first (weak) aorist tense – has the characteristic alpha.

having stopped

		<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>
<i>sg</i>	<i>nom</i>	παύσ-ας	παυσ-ασ-α	παῦσ-αν
	<i>acc</i>	παύσ-αντα	παύσ-ασ-αν	παῦσ-αν
	<i>gen</i>	παύσ-αντος	παυσ-άσ-ης	παύσ-αντος
	<i>dat</i>	παύσ-αντι	παυσ-άσ-η	παύσ-αντι
<i>pl</i>	<i>nom</i>	παύσ-αντες	παύσ-ασ-αι	παύσ-αντα
	<i>acc</i>	παύσ-αντας	παυσ-άσ-ας	παύσ-αντα
	<i>gen</i>	παυσ-άντων	παυσ-ασ-ῶν	παυσ-άντων
	<i>dat</i>	παύσ-ασι(ν)	παυσ-άσ-αις	παύσ-ασι(ν)

APPENDIX: WORDS EASILY CONFUSED

αποθνήσκω	I die
ἀποκτείνω	I kill
εἰς	into
εἷς	one (<i>m</i>)
ἐν	in
εν	one (<i>n</i>)
ἐξ	out of
εξ	six
ἐπεὶ	when, since
επειτα	then, next
ἤθελον	I was willing, I wanted (<i>imperfect of</i> ἐθέλω)
ἦλθον	I came, I went (<i>irreg aor</i>)
ἡμεῖς	we
ὕμεῖς	you (<i>pl</i>)
ἡμέτερος	our
ὕμέτερος	your (<i>of you pl</i>)
ναύτης	sailor
ναυτικόν	fleet
νῆσος	island
νόμος	law, custom
νόσος	disease, illness
πολέμιοι	enemy
πόλεμος	war
πολίτης	citizen
στρατηγός	general, commander
στρατιώτης	soldier
στρατόπεδον	camp
στρατός	army

GLOSSARY OF GRAMMAR TERMS

accidence the part of grammar that deals with word endings.

accusative case of direct object; used with prepositions, usually expressing *motion towards*; used to express *time how long*.

adjective word describing a noun (with which it agrees in number, gender and case).

adverb word describing a verb (or an adjective, or another adverb).

agree have the same number (agreement of subject and verb); have the same number, gender and case (agreement of noun and adjective).

ambiguous can mean more than one thing.

aorist tense of a verb referring to a single action in the past (as distinct from imperfect).

article (see *definite article*).

augment epsilon with smooth breathing (ἐ-) put on the front of a verb to denote a past tense.

breathing symbol above a vowel or diphthong (or rho) beginning a word, indicating presence (rough breathing: ᾱ = *ha*) or absence (smooth breathing: α = *a*) of *h* sound or *aspiration*. Either breathing comes on the second letter of a diphthong (αὖ, αὐ).

cardinal numeral (1, 2, 3), as distinct from *ordinal* (first, second, third).

case form of a noun, pronoun or adjective that shows the job it does in the sentence (e.g. accusative for direct object); cases are arranged in the order nominative, (vocative), accusative, genitive, dative.

clause part of a sentence with its own subject and verb.

common (referring to gender): can be either masculine or feminine according to context.

complement another nominative word or phrase describing the subject.

compound verb with prefix (e.g. ἐκβαίνω = *I go out*).

conjugate go through the different parts of a tense of a verb in order (e.g. παύω, παύεις, παύει etc): first, second, third person singular, then plural, as distinct from *decline* (used for a noun, pronoun, adjective or participle).

conjugation pattern by which verbs change their endings.

conjunction word joining clauses, phrases or words together (e.g. *and*, *but*, *therefore*).

consonant letter representing a sound that can only be used together with a vowel.

construction pattern according to which a particular type of sentence, clause or expression is formed.

dative case of indirect object, often translated *to* or *for*; used with prepositions, often to express position or rest (as distinct from motion); used to express *time when*.

declension one of the three patterns by which nouns change their endings (also used for adjectives and pronouns).

decline go through the different parts of a noun, pronoun or adjective in case order, singular then plural (as distinct from *conjugate*, used of tenses of a verb).

definite article ὁ ἡ τό (equivalent to English *the*, but used more widely).

diphthong two consecutive vowels pronounced as one syllable (e.g. αἱ, εἰ, οὐ).

direct object person or thing on the receiving end of the action of a verb, expressed by the accusative case.

- elision** dropping a vowel at the end of a word before another word beginning with a vowel, indicated by an apostrophe (e.g. *ἀπ'* for *ἀπό*).
- enclitic** a word that cannot stand alone but closely follows another word (e.g. the indefinite *τις*).
- ending** last bit of a word, added to the stem to give more information and show its job in the sentence.
- feminine** one of the three genders, for females or things imagined as female.
- future** tense of verb referring to something that will happen in the future.
- gender** one of three categories (masculine, feminine, neuter) into which nouns and pronouns are put according to their actual or imagined sex or lack of it.
- genitive** case expressing possession or definition, often translated *of*; used with prepositions expressing *motion away from*; used to express *time within which*.
- homonym** word coincidentally spelled in the same way as another unrelated word.
- imperative** form of verb used for direct command (*παῦε* = *stop!*).
- imperfect** tense of a verb referring to an incomplete, extended or repeated action in the past.
- indeclinable** does not change its endings.
- indirect object** person or thing indirectly affected by the action of a verb, expressed by the dative case e.g. *I gave the money (direct object) to the old man (indirect object)*.
- infinitive** form of verb introduced by *to*, expressing the basic meaning (e.g. *παύειν* = *to stop*).
- irregular** word whose endings do not follow one of the standard patterns.
- literally** translated in a way corresponding closely to the Greek words, but which needs to be modified to produce natural English.
- masculine** one of the three genders, for males or things imagined as male.
- negative** expressing that something is not the case.
- neuter** one of the three genders, for things imagined as neither male nor female.
- nominative** case used for the subject of a sentence.
- noun** word naming a person or thing (e.g. *ἄρχων* = *ruler*); a *proper* noun with a capital letter gives their actual name (e.g. *Ἀλέξανδρος* = *Alexander*).
- number** being either singular or plural.
- numerals** numbers.
- object** person or thing on the receiving end of the action of a verb.
- ordinal** type of numeral expressing order (first, second, third), as an adjective (as distinct from cardinal).
- part of speech** category of word (noun, adjective, pronoun, verb, adverb, preposition, conjunction).
- participle** adjective formed from a verb (e.g. *παύων* = *stopping*).
- particle** short indeclinable word (often conjunction or adverb) connecting things together, or giving emphasis or colour (e.g. *οὖν* = *therefore*).
- person** term for the subject of verb: first person = *I, we*; second person = *you*, third person = *he, she, it, they* (or a noun replacing one of these).
- phrase** group of words not containing a verb with a person ending (as distinct from *clause*).
- plural** more than one.
- possessive** adjective or pronoun expressing who or what something belongs to.
- prefix** word or syllable added to the beginning of another word.
- preposition** word used with a noun or pronoun in the accusative, genitive or dative to focus more closely the meaning of the case (e.g. *εἰς* = *into*).
- present** tense of a verb referring to something that is happening now (or, in the case of a present participle, at the same time as the action described by main verb of the sentence).
- pronoun** word that stands instead of a noun, avoiding the need to repeat it.
- sentence** group of words with subject and verb (and often other elements), which makes sense on its own.
- singular** just one (as distinct from plural).

stem the part of a word which stays the same: different endings are added to give more information and show the job it does in the sentence.

subject person or thing in the nominative case, expressing who or what does the action of the verb.

syllable part of a word forming a spoken unit, usually consisting of a vowel with consonants before or after or both.

syntax the part of grammar that deals with sentences and constructions (as distinct from *accidence*).

tense form of a verb showing when the action takes place (in the past, present or future).

verb word expressing an action.

vocative case used for addressing someone or something.

vowel letter representing a sound that can be spoken by itself: α, ε, ι, ο, υ, ω.

ENGLISH TO GREEK VOCABULARY

Verbs are usually given with present and aorist.

Nouns are given with nominative, genitive, and article to show gender.

Adjectives are given with masculine, feminine, and neuter.

** = comes second word in sentence, clause or phrase.*

able, I am	οίος τ' εἰμι
about	περι (+ <i>gen</i>)
account of, on	δια (+ <i>acc</i>)
admire, I	θαυμάζω ἐθαύμασα
after (<i>preposition</i>)	μετά (+ <i>acc</i>)
after (<i>introducing a clause</i>)	(<i>use an aorist participle</i>)
again	αὖθις
agora	ἀγορά -ας ἡ
all	πας πασα παν (παντ-)
ally	συμμαχος -ου ὁ
alone	μονος -η -ον
although	καίπερ (+ <i>participle</i>)
always	αει
am, I	εἰμι
amazed (at), I am	θαυμάζω ἐθαύμασα
and	καί
announce, I	ἀγγέλλω ἡγγείλα
another	ἄλλος -η -ο
arms, armour	όπλα -ων τα
army	στρατος -ου ὁ
arrange, I	τασσω ἐταξα
as	ὥς
assembly	ἐκκλησια -ας ἡ
at first	πρωτον
Athenian	Αθηναιος -α -ον
bad	κακος -η -ον
battle	μαχη -ης ἡ
be, to	εἶναι
beautiful	καλος -η -ον
beautiful, very	καλλιστος -η -ον
because	διоти (<i>or use a participle</i>)
before, previously	προτερον
believe, I	πιστευω ἐπιστευσα (+ <i>dat</i>)
big, very	μεγιστος -η -ον
body	σωμα -ατος το

body, dead	νεκρος -ου ό
book	βιβλος -ου ή
both . . . and	τε* . . . και
boy	παις παιδος ό
brave	άνδρειος -α -ον
bring, I	φερω ήνεγκα
bury, I	θαπτω έθαψα
but	άλλα, δε*
came, I	ήλθον (<i>irregular aorist</i>)
camp	στρατοπεδον -ου το
can, I	οίος τ' είμι
carry, I	φερω ήνεγκα
certain, a	τις τι (τιν-)
chase, I	διωκω έδιωξα
child	παις παιδος ό/ή
citizen	πολιτης -ου ό
clever	σοφος -η -ον
collect (something), I	συλλεγω συνελεξα
commander	στρατηγος -ου ό
community	δημος -ου ό
concerning	περι (+ <i>gen</i>)
contest	άγων -ωνος ό
corpse	νεκρος -ου ό
council	βουλη -ης ή
country, land	χωρα -ας ή
custom	νομος -ου ό
damage, I	βλαπτω έβλαψα
danger	κινδυνος -ου ό
dangerous	χαλεπος -η -ον
day	ήμερα -ας ή
dead body	νεκρος -ου ό
death	θανατος -ου ό
deed	εργον -ου το
despite (being)	καιπερ (+ <i>participle</i>)
die, I	αποθνησκω απεθανον
difficult	χαλεπος -η -ον
dinner	δειπνον -ου το
disease	νοσος -ου ή
door	θυρα -ας ή
draw up, I	τασσω έταξα
each	εκαστος -η -ον
earth	γη γης ή
eat	εσθιω εφαγον
eight	οκτω
enemy (personal)	εχθρος -ου ό
enemy (in war)	πολεμιοι -ων οι
evening	εσπερα -ας ή
every	πας πασα παν (παντ-)

fall, I
 fall into, I
 fear
 few
 field
 fifth
 finally
 find, I
 fine
 fine, very
 fire
 first (*adj*)
 first (*adv*), at first
 five
 flee, I
 fleet
 foolish
 foot
 for
 foreigner
 four
 fourth
 free
 friend
 from
 from where?

gate
 gather (something), I
 general
 get to know, I
 giant
 gift
 girl
 go, I
 go away, I
 go out, I
 go to(wards), I
 god
 goddess
 good
 great, very
 guard

harbour
 harm, I
 have, I
 hear, I
 her
 here
 here, I am

πιπτω έπεσον
 εισπιπτω εισεπεσον
 φοβος -ου ό
 όλιγοι -αι -α
 άγρος -ου ό
 πεμπτος -η -ον
 τελος
 εύρισκω ηύρον
 καλος -η -ον
 καλλιστος -η -ον
 πυρ πυρος το
 πρώτος -η -ον
 πρώτον
 πεντε
 φευγω έφυγον
 ναυτικον -ου το
 μωρος -α -ον
 πους ποδος ό
 γαρ*
 ξενος -ου ό
 τεσσαρες τεσσαρα
 τεταρτος -η -ον
 έλευθερος -α -ον
 φιλος -ου ό
 άπο (+ *gen*)
 ποθεν;

πυλη -ης ή
 συλλεγω συνελεξα
 στρατηγος -ου ό
 γινωσκω
 γιγας -αντος ό
 δωρον -ου το
 κορη -ης ή, παις παιδος ή
 βαινω
 αποβαινω
 εκβαινω
 προσβαινω
 θεος -ου ό
 θεα -ας ή
 άγαθος -η -ον
 μεγιστος -η -ον
 φυλαξ -ακος ό

λιμην -ενος ό
 βλαπτω έβλαψα
 έχω έσχον
 άκουω ήκουσα (+ *acc of thing, gen of person*)
 αύτην
 ενθαδε
 πάρεμι *imperfect* παρῆν

him	αὐτον
hinder, I	κωλυω ἐκωλυσα
honour	τιμη -ης ή
horse	ίππος -ου ό
hostile	έχθρος -α -ον
hour	ώρα -ας ή
house	οίκια -ας ή
how?	πως;
however	μεντοι*
I	έγω
illness	νοσος -ου ή
immediately	εὐθυσ
in	έν (+ <i>dat</i>)
in order to	ώς (+ <i>future participle</i>)
in this way	οὕτω(ς)
into	εις (+ <i>acc</i>)
island	νησος -ου ή
journey	όδος -ου ή
judge	κριτης -ου ό
kill, I	ἀποκτεινω ἀπεκτεινα
know, I get to	γιγνωσκω
land	χωρα -ας ή
law	νομος -ου ό
lead, I	άγω ήγαγον
lead out, I	έξαγω έξηγαγον
lead to(wards), I	προσαγω προσηγαγον
learn, I	μανθανω έμαθον
leave, I	λειπω έλιπον
letter	επιστολη -ης ή
life	βιος -ου ό
listen (to), I	άκουω ήκουσα (+ <i>acc of thing, gen of person</i>)
little (of), a	ολιγος -η -ον
magistrate	άρχων -οντος ό
man, human being	άνθρωπος -ου ό
many	πολλοι -αι -α
market-place	άγορα -ας ή
messenger	άγγελος -ου ό
money	χρηματα -ων τα
my	έμος -η -ον
name	όνομα -ατος το
new	νεος -α -ον
next	έπειτα
night	νυξ νυκτος ή
nine	έννεα
no . . ., not any	οὐδεις οὐδεμια οὐδεν (οὐδεν-)

no-one	οὐδεις οὐδεμια (οὐδεν-)
not	οὐ (οὐκ <i>before smooth breathing</i> , οὐχ <i>before rough breathing</i>)
nothing	οὐδεν (οὐδεν-)
often	πολλακις
old man	γερων -οντος ὁ
on account of	δια (+ <i>acc</i>)
on the one hand . . . on the other	μεν* . . . δε*
one	εἰς μια ἐν (εν-)
only (<i>adj</i>)	μονος -η -ον
only (<i>adv</i>)	μονον
order, I	κελευω ἐκελευσα
order to, in	ὡς (+ <i>future participle</i>)
other	ἄλλος -η -ο
our	ἡμετερος -α -ον
out of	ἐκ (ἐξ <i>before vowel</i>) (+ <i>gen</i>)
past, in the	παλαι
peace	εἰρηνη -ης ἡ
people, community	δημος -ου ὁ
persuade, I	πειθω ἐπεισα
place	τοπος -ου ὁ
plan	βουλη -ης ἡ
poet	ποιητης -ου ὁ
prepare, I	παρασκευαζω παρεσκευασα
prevent, I	κωλυω ἐκωλυσα
previously	προτερον
prison	δεσμωτηριον -ου το
prize	ἄθλον -ου το
produce, I	παρεχω παρεσχον
provide, I	παρεχω παρεσχον
pursue, I	διωκω ἐδιωξα
ready	ἐτοιμος -η -ον
ready, I get (something)	παρασκευαζω παρεσκευασα
reason	λογος -ου ὁ
release, I	λυω ἔλυσα
remain, I	μενω ἐμεινα
river	ποταμος -ου ὁ
road	ὁδος -ου ἡ
ruler	ἄρχων -οντος ὁ
run, I	τρεχω ἐδραμον
run away, I	φευγω ἐφυγον, ἀποτρεχω ἀπεδραμον
run out, I	ἐκτρεχω ἐξεδραμον
run towards, I	προστρεχω προσεδραμον
said, I	εἶπον (<i>used as aorist of λέγω</i>)
sailor	ναυτης -ου ὁ
same, the	ὁ αὐτος, ἡ αὐτη, το αὐτο
saw, I	εἶδον

say, I	λεγω (έλεξα or) είπον
sea	θαλασσα -ης ή
sea-battle	ναυμαχια -ας ή
second	δευτερος -α -ον
self	αύτος -η -ο
send, I	πεμπω έπεμψα
send to(wards), I	προσπεμπω προσεπεμψα
seven	έπτα
shout	βοη -ης ή
since	έπει (or use a participle)
six	έξ
slave	δουλος -ου ό
sleep	ύπνος -ου ό
small	μικρος -α -ον
small amount (of)	όλιγος -η -ον
so	ούτω(ς)
soldier	στρατιωτης -ου ό
someone	τις (τιν-)
something	τι (τιν-)
speak, I	λεγω (έλεξα or) είπον
stay, I	μενω έμεινα
steal, I	κλεπτω εκλεψα
still	έτι
stone	λιθος -ου ό
stop (something), I	παυω έπανσα
story (myth, fable)	μυθος -ος ό
story (factual or historical)	λογος -ου ό
strange	δεινος -η -ον
stranger	ξενος -ου ό
stupid	μωρος -α -ον
suffer, I	πασχω έπαθον
take, I	λαμβάνω έλαβον
teach, I	διδασκω έδίδαξα
teacher	διδασκαλος -ου ό
temple	ίερον -ου το
ten	δεκα
terrible	δεινος -η -ον
the	ό, ή, το
them (<i>m acc pl</i>)	αύτους
then, next	έπειτα
there	έκει
therefore	ούν*
third	τρεις -η -ον
three	τρεις τρια
through	δια (+ <i>gen</i>) (+ <i>acc</i> = on account of)
throw, I	βαλω έβαλον
throw away, I	άποβαλλω άπεβαλον
throw in, I	έμβαλλω ένεβαλον
throw out, I	εκβαλλω έξεβαλον
time	χρονος -ου ό

towards	προς (+ <i>acc</i>)
tree	δενδρον -ου το
trust, I	πιστευω ἐπιστευσα (+ <i>dat</i>)
two	δυο
very fine, very beautiful	καλλιστος -η -ον
very great	μεγιστος -η -ον
victory	νικη -ης ή
village	κωμη -ης ή
voice	φωνη -ης ή
wait (for)	μενω ἐμεινα
war	πολεμος -ου ο
water	υδωρ -ατος το
way, road	οδος -ου ή
way, in this	ούτω(ς)
we	ήμεις
weapons	όπλα -ων τα
went, I	ήλθον (<i>irregular aorist</i>)
what?	τί; (τίν-;)
when?	ποτε;
when, since	ἐπει (<i>or use a participle</i>)
where?	που;
where from?	ποθεν;
which?	τίς; τί; (τίν-;)
while	(<i>use a present participle</i>)
who?	τίς; (τίν-;)
why?	δια τί;
willing, I am	ἐθελω ήθελησα
wind	ανεμος -ου ο
wine	οινος -ου ο
wisdom	σοφια -ας ή
wise	σοφος -η -ον
wish, I	ἐθελω ήθελησα
with	μετα (+ <i>gen</i>)
word	λογος -ου ο
work	εργον -ου το
write, I	γραφω ἐγραψα
yet, still	ἐτι
you (sg)	συ
you (pl)	ύμεις
young man	νεανιας -ου ο
your (of you sg)	σος, σης, στον
your (of you pl)	ύμετερος -α -ον
Zeus	Ζευς Διος ο

GREEK TO ENGLISH VOCABULARY

Verbs are usually given with present and aorist.

Nouns are given with nominative, genitive, and article to show gender.

Adjectives are given with masculine, feminine, and neuter.

** = comes second word in sentence, clause or phrase.*

chapter:

ἀγαγ-	(aorist stem of ἄγω)	
αγαθός ή -όν	good	(3)
αγγέλλω ήγγειλα	I announce, I report	(6)
ἄγγελος -ου ό	messenger	(1)
ἀγορά -ας ή	agora, market-place, public square	(2)
ἀγρός -ου ό	field	(5)
ἄγω ήγαγον	I lead	(1)
ἀγών -ώνος ό	contest	(5)
αεί	always	(3)
Αθηναῖος -α -ον	Athenian	(3)
ἄθλον -ου τό	prize	(2)
ἀκούω ήκουσα	I hear, I listen to (+ acc of thing, gen of person)	(1)
ἀλλά	but	(2)
ἄλλος -η -ο	other, another	(5)
ανδρεῖος -α -ον	brave	(3)
ἄνεμος -ου ό	wind	(5)
ἄνθρωπος -ου ό	man, human being	(2)
ἀπό	from (+ gen)	(3)
αποβάλλω ἀπέβαλον	I throw away	(4)
αποθνήσκω ἀπέθανον	I die	(3)
ἀποκτείνω ἀπέκτεινα	I kill	(2)
ἄρα;	(introduces an open question, e.g. Is it . . . ?)	(3)
ἄρχων -οντος ό	ruler, magistrate	(5)
αὖθις	again	(6)
αὐτός -ή -ό	self; (after definite article) the same; (not nom)	(6)
	him, her, it	
βαίνω	I go	(1)
βαλ-	(aorist stem of βάλλω)	
βάλλω έβαλον	I throw	(4)
βίβλος -ου ή	book	(4)
βίος -ου ό	life	(2)
βλάπτω έβλαψα	I harm, I damage	(5)

βοή -ῆς ἡ	shout	(1)
βουλή -ῆς ἡ	plan; council	(1)
γὰρ*	for	(3)
γέρων -οντος ὁ	old man	(5)
γῆ γῆς ἡ	earth	(1)
γίγας -αντος ὁ	giant	(5)
γινώσκω	I get to know, I realise, I understand	(3)
γράφω εγραψα	I write	(1)
δε*	but; and	(3)
δεινός -ῆ -όν	strange, terrible	(3)
δεῖπνον -ου τό	dinner, meal	(2)
δέκα	ten	(2)
δένδρον -ου τό	tree	(2)
δεσμωτήριον -ου τό	prison	(2)
δευτέρος -α -ον	second	(6)
δῆμος -ου ὁ	people, community	(2)
διά	(+ <i>acc</i>) on account of	(5)
	(+ <i>gen</i>) through	(5)
δια τί;	why?	(5)
διδάσκαλος -ου ὁ	teacher	(1)
διδάσκω ἐδίδαξα	I teach	(1)
Διός	(<i>irregular genitive of Ζεὺς</i>)	
διότι	because	(3)
διώκω ἐδιώξα	I chase, I pursue	(1)
δοῦλος -ου ὁ	slave	(1)
δραμ-	(<i>aurist stem of τρέχω</i>)	
δύο	two	(4)
δῶρον -ου τό	gift	(2)
εβαλον	(<i>aurist of βάλλω</i>)	
εγώ	I	(5)
ἐδραμον	(<i>aurist of τρέχω</i>)	
ἐθέλω ἠθέλησα	I wish, I am willing	(3)
εἶδον	I saw (<i>irregular aorist</i>)	(5)
εἰμί <i>imperfect</i> ἦ (or ἦν)	I am	(2)
εἶναι	to be (<i>infinitive of εἰμί</i>)	(6)
εἶπον	I said (<i>irregular aorist of λέγω</i>)	(4)
εἰρήνη -ης ἡ	peace	(1)
εἰς	into (+ <i>acc</i>)	(1)
εἷς μία ἓν (έν-)	one	(6)
εἰσπίπτω εἰσέπεσον	I fall into	(4)
ἐκ (ἐξ <i>before vowel</i>)	out of (+ <i>gen</i>)	(3)
ἐκαστος -η -ον	each	(5)
ἐκβαίνω	I go out	(4)
ἐκεῖ	there	(3)
ἐκκλησία -ας ἡ	assembly	(2)
ἐκτρέχω	I run out	(4)
ἐλαβον	(<i>aurist of λαμβάνω</i>)	
ελεύθερος -α -ον	free	(3)

ἔλιπον	(<i>aorist of λείπω</i>)	
ἔμαθον	(<i>aorist of μανθάνω</i>)	
ἐμβάλλω ἐνέβαλον	I throw in, I thrust in	(5)
ἔμεινα	(<i>aorist of μένω</i>)	
ἐμός -ή -όν	my	(5)
ἐν	in (+ <i>dat</i>)	(3)
εν	one (<i>neuter</i>)	(6)
ἐνεγκ-	(<i>aorist stem of φέρω</i>)	
ἐνθάδε	here	(3)
ἐννέα	nine	(6)
ἕξ	six	(6)
εξάγω ἐξήγαγον	I lead out	(4)
επαθον	(<i>aorist of πάσχω</i>)	
ἐπεί	when, since	(4)
ἐπεισα	(<i>aorist of πείθω</i>)	
ἐπειτα	then, next	(4)
επεσον	(<i>aorist of πίπτω</i>)	
ἐπιον	(<i>aorist of πίνω</i>)	
επιστολή -ῆς ἡ	letter	(1)
επτά	seven	(6)
ἔργον -ου τό	work, deed	(2)
ἐσθίω εφαγον	I eat	(4)
εσπέρα -ας ἡ	evening	(2)
εσχον	(<i>aorist of ἔχω</i>)	
ἔταξα	(<i>aorist of τάσσω</i>)	
ἔτι	still	(5)
ετοιμος -η -ον	ready	(5)
εὐθύς	immediately	(6)
εὐρ-	(<i>aorist stem of ευρίσκω</i>)	
εὐρίσκω ἤυρον	I find	(2)
ἔφαγον	(<i>aorist of ἐσθίω</i>)	
ἔφυγον	(<i>aorist of φεύγω</i>)	
εχθρός -ά -όν	hostile	(3)
εχθρός -οῦ ό	(personal) enemy	(6)
ἔχω εσχον	I have	(1)
Ζεὺς Διός ό	Zeus	(6)
ἦγαγον	(<i>aorist of ἄγω</i>)	
ἡγγεῖλα	(<i>aorist of αγγέλλω</i>)	
ἠθέλησα	(<i>aorist of ἐθέλω</i>)	
ἦλθον	(<i>irregular aorist</i>) I came, I went	(6)
ἡμεῖς -ῶν	we	(6)
ἡμερα -ας ἡ	day	(2)
ἡμετερος -α -ον	our	(6)
ἦνεγκα	(<i>aorist of φέρω</i>)	
ἠύρον	(<i>aorist of ευρίσκω</i>)	
θάλασσα -ης ἡ	sea	(4)
θάνατος -ου ό	death	(2)
θάπτω εθαψα	I bury	(6)

θαυμάζω ἐθαύμασα	I am amazed (at), I admire	(3)
θεά -ᾶς ἡ	goddess	(2)
θεός -ου ὁ	god	(1)
θύρα -ας ἡ	door	(2)
ἱερόν -ου τό	temple	(2)
ἵππος -ου ὁ	horse	(1)
καί	and; also	(2)
καίπερ	although, despite (+ <i>participle</i>)	(6)
κακός -ή -όν	bad, wicked	(3)
κάλλιστος -η -ον	very fine, very beautiful	(5)
καλός -ή -όν	fine, beautiful	(3)
κελεύω ἐκέλευσα	I order	(3)
κίνδυνος -ου ὁ	danger	(2)
κλέπτω ἐκλεψα	I steal	(5)
κόρη -ης ἡ	girl	(1)
κριτής -ου ὁ	judge	(4)
κωλύω ἐκώλυσα	I hinder, I prevent	(5)
κώμη -ης ἡ	village	(1)
λαμβάνω λαβον	I take	(2)
λέγω (ἔλεξα <i>or</i>) εἶπον	I speak, I say	(1)
λείπω ἔλιπον	I leave	(2)
λίθος -ου ὁ	stone	(5)
λιμήν -ένος ὁ	harbour	(5)
λιπ-	(<i>ao</i> rist stem of λείπω)	
λόγος -ου ὁ	word, reason, story	(1)
λύω ἐλυσα	I release, I untie	(2)
μαθ-	(<i>ao</i> rist stem of μαθαίνω)	
μανθάνω ἔμαθον	I learn	(2)
μάχη -ης ἡ	battle	(6)
μέγιστος -η -ον	very great, very big	(4)
μειν-	(<i>ao</i> rist stem of μένω)	
μέν* . . . δέ*	on the one hand . . . on the other	(3)
μέντοι*	however	(3)
μένω ἔμεινα	I stay, I remain; I wait for	(2)
μετά	(+ <i>acc</i>) after	(4)
	(+ <i>gen</i>) with	(5)
μία	one (<i>feminine</i>)	(6)
μικρός -ά -όν	small	(3)
μόνον	only (<i>adv</i>)	(5)
μόνος -η -ον	only, alone	(5)
μῦθος -ου ὁ	story (myth, fable)	(4)
μῶρος -α -ον	stupid, foolish	(5)
ναυμαχία -ας ἡ	sea-battle	(2)
ναύτης -ου ὁ	sailor	(4)
ναυτικόν -ου τό	fleet	(2)
νεανίας -ου ὁ	young man	(4)

νεκρός -ου ό	corpse, dead body	(6)
νέος -α -ον	new; young	(3)
νήσος -ου ή	island	(4)
νίκη -ης ή	victory	(1)
νόμος -ου ό	law; custom	(2)
νόσος -ου ή	disease	(4)
νυν	now	(3)
νύξ νυκτός ή	night	(5)
ξένος -ου ό	stranger, foreigner	(1)
ό ή τό	the	(1)
όδός -ου ή	road, journey	(4)
οίκία -ας ή	house	(2)
οίνος -ου ό	wine	(5)
οἶός τ' εἰμί	I am able	(5)
οκτώ	eight	(6)
ολίγοι -αι -α	few	(5)
ολίγος -η -ον	a little, a small amount of	(6)
όνομα -ατος τό	name	(5)
όπλα -ων τά	arms, weapons (<i>pl</i>)	(2)
ού (ούκ, ούχ)	not	(1)
οὐδείς οὐδεμία οὐδέν (οὐδεν-)	no-one, nothing, no (<i>i.e.</i> not any)	(6)
οὖν*	therefore	(3)
παθ-	(<i>aurist stem of</i> πασχω)	
παῖς παιδός ό/ή	boy, girl, child	(5)
πάλαι	long ago, in the past	(6)
παρασκευάζω	I prepare	(6)
παρεσκεύασα		
πάρειμι <i>imperfect</i> παρῆν	I am here, I am present	(5)
παρέχω παρέσχον	I produce, I provide	(3)
πᾶς πᾶσα πᾶν (παντ-)	all, every	(6)
πάσχω ἔπαθον	I suffer, I experience	(4)
παύω ἔπαυσα	I stop	(1)
πείθω ἐπεισα	I persuade	(3)
πέμπτος -η -ον	fifth	(6)
πέμπω ἐπεμψα	I send	(2)
πέντε	five	(2)
περί	about, concerning (+ <i>gen</i>)	(6)
πες-	(<i>aurist stem of</i> πίπτω)	
πίνω ἐπιον	I drink	(5)
πίπτω ἐπεσον	I fall	(4)
πιστεύω ἐπίστευσα	I trust, I believe (+ <i>dat</i>)	(3)
πλοῖον -ου τό	boat	(2)
πόθεν;	where from?	(5)
ποιητής -ου ό	poet	(4)
πολέμιοι -ων οἱ	enemy (<i>in war</i>)	(6)
πόλεμος -ου ό	war	(2)

πολίτης -ου ό	citizen	(4)
πολλάκις	often	(3)
πολλοί -αί -ά	many	(5)
ποταμός -ου ό	river	(1)
πότε;	when?	(3)
που;	where?	(3)
πούς ποδός ό	foot	(5)
πρός	towards (+ <i>acc</i>)	(1)
προσάγω προσηγαγον	I lead to(wards)	(4)
προσβαίνω	I go towards	(4)
προσπέμπω προσέπεμψα	I send to(wards)	(4)
προστρέχω προσέδραμον	I run towards	(4)
πρότερον	previously, before	(3)
πρώτον	first (<i>adv</i>), at first	(4)
πρώτος -η -ον	first	(6)
πύλη -ης ή	gate	(1)
πῦρ πυρός τό	fire	(5)
πώς;	how?	(3)
σός σή σόν	your (of you <i>sg</i>)	(5)
σοφία -ας ή	wisdom	(2)
σοφός -ή -όν	wise, clever	(3)
στρατηγός -ου ό	general	(1)
στρατιώτης -ου ό	soldier	(4)
στρατόπεδον -ου τό	camp	(2)
στρατός -ου ό	army	(1)
συ	you (<i>sg</i>)	(5)
συλλέγω συνελεξα	I collect, I gather	(6)
σύμμαχος -ου ό	ally	(1)
σχ-	(<i>aorist stem of</i> ἔχω)	
σῶμα -ατος τό	body	(5)
τάσσω ἔταξα	I draw up, I arrange	(2)
τε* . . . καί	both . . . and	(2)
τέλος	finally	(6)
τέσσαρες τέσσαρα	four	(6)
τέταρτος -η -ον	fourth	(6)
τιμή -ης ή	honour	(1)
τίς; τί; (τιν-)	who? which? what?	(5)
τις τι (τιν-)	a certain, someone, something	(5)
τόπος -ου ό	place	(6)
τρεις τρία	three	(6)
τρέχω ἔδραμον	I run	(1)
τρίτος -η -ον	third	(6)
ὕδωρ -ατος τό	water	(6)
ὕμεις -ῶν	you (<i>pl</i>)	(6)
ὕμέτερος -α -ον	your (of you <i>pl</i>)	(6)
ὕπνος -ου ό	sleep	(5)

φαγ-	(<i>aurist stem</i> ἐσθίω)	
φέρω ἤνεγκα	I carry, I bring	(1)
φεύγω εφυγον	I run away	(2)
φίλος -ου ό	friend	(2)
φόβος -ου ό	fear	(2)
φυγ-	(<i>aurist stem of</i> φεύγω)	
φύλαξ -ακος ό	guard	(5)
φυλάσσω ἐφύλαξα	I guard	(1)
φωνή -ης ἥ	voice	(1)
χαλεπός -ή -όν	difficult; dangerous	(3)
χρήματα -ων τά	money	(6)
χρήσιμος -η -ον	useful	(4)
χρόνος -ου ό	time	(2)
χώρα -ας ή	country	(2)
ὦ	O (<i>used + voc, to address someone;</i> <i>usually better omitted in English</i>)	(3)
ώρα -ας ή	hour	(2)
ὥς	as (+ <i>present or aorist participle</i>) as, since, because, on the grounds that (+ <i>future participle</i>) in order to	(4) (6) (6)

250 words Greek-English

INDEX

- accents 89
- adjectives 41
- adverbs 39, 44
- alphabet 1, 3
- aorist participle 136, 141
- aorist tense 60, 69
- αὐτός, uses of 133, 134
- breathings 2
- capital letters 6
- cases taken by prepositions 105
- cases taken by verbs 40
- compound verbs 81
- connecting words 23
- definite article 13, 26, 33
- diphthongs 2
- elision 95
- first declension 11, 18, 24, 33, 76, 80
- focusing the sense of participles 157
- future participle 155
- future tense 48
- gender and declension 75, 76, 79
- genitive and dative 33
- glossary of grammar terms 189
- imperative 38
- imperfect tense 51
- infinitive 40
- iota subscript 3
- negative 13
- nominative and accusative 11
- numerals 144
- οὐδείς, use of 148
- particles 44
- personal pronouns and adjectives
107, 151
- πας, use of 138
- possessive dative 153
- prepositions 14, 34
- present participle 110, 121
- present tense 8
- punctuation 55
- questions 55
- sandwich construction 36
- second declension 11, 18, 27, 33, 80
- third declension 90
- time, expressions of 27, 146
- τίς / τις, uses of 98
- to be, verb 22, 52
- transliteration 4
- word order 13
- words easily confused 188

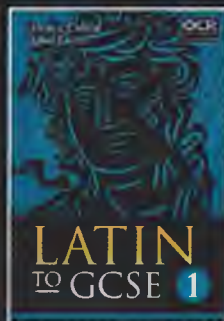
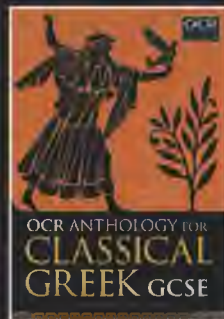
First written in response to a JACT survey of over 100 schools, and now endorsed by OCR, this textbook has become a standard resource for students in the UK and for readers across the world who are looking for a clear and thorough introduction to the language of the ancient Greeks. Revised throughout and enhanced by coloured artwork and text features, this edition will support the new OCR specification for Classical Greek (first teaching 2016).

Part 1 covers the basics and is self-contained, with its own reference section. It covers the main declensions, a range of active tenses and a vocabulary of 250 Greek words to be learned. Pupil confidence is built up by constant consolidation of the material covered. After the preliminaries, each chapter concentrates on stories with one source or subject: Aesop, Homer's *Odyssey* and Alexander the Great, providing an excellent introduction to Greek culture alongside the language study. Written by a long-time school teacher and examiner, this two-part course is based on experience of what pupils find difficult, concentrating on the essentials and on the understanding of principles in both accidence and syntax: minor irregularities are postponed and subordinated so that the need for rote learning is reduced. It aims to be user-friendly, but also to give pupils a firm foundation for further study.

This edition is endorsed by OCR for use with the OCR GCSE (9-1) Classical Greek (J292) specification, for examination from 2018.

John Taylor was for many years Head of Classics at Tonbridge School, UK, and is now Lecturer in Greek and Latin at the University of Manchester, UK. He is the author of *Greek Beyond GCSE* and co-author of *Greek Stories* (with Kristian Waite) and *Greek Unseen Translation* and *Writing Greek* (both with Stephen Anderson). These and his new companion course, *Latin to GCSE*, co-written with Henry Cullen, are all published by Bloomsbury.

Also available:



CLASSICAL STUDIES

Cover design by Terry Woodley. Cover image © Shutterstock.

OCR

Oxford Cambridge and RSA

An OCR endorsed textbook

Bloomsbury is OCR's
publisher partner for
Classical Greek



ISBN 978-1-4742-5516-5



9 781474 255165

www.bloomsbury.com